

Speak out

3RD EDITION







Workbook



Damian Williams

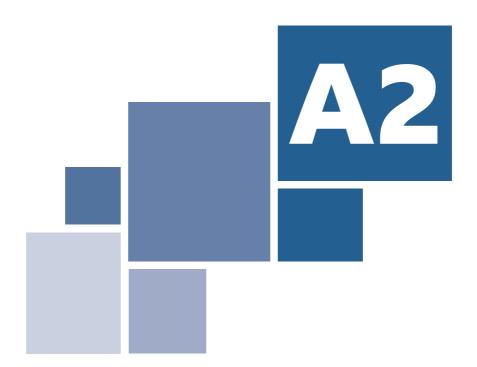


teachers' chat https://t.me/teaching_crew





3RD EDITION



Workbook

CONTENTS

IC [10] adjectives for feelings; time pp8-9 possessive 's, s' intonation to show interest Pp8-9 prases; family countable and uncountable nouns; a, an, some, any the weak /a/ sound: a, an, some Pp10-11 food and drink countable and uncountable nouns; a, an, some, any linking Pp12-13 everyday activities adverbs and phrases of frequency linking Pp12-15 restaurant words like, hate, love + -ing polite intonation REVIEW 1-2 pp16-17 sentence stress polite intonation 36 pcomon adjectives (1) have got sentence stress 37 (130 social phrases there is, there are rhythm in phrases 40 sp20-21 show and strong sounds: was, were weak, and strong sounds: was, were 41 pp26-27 amounts; numbers how much, how many; how * adjective intonation to check understanding how * adjective 42 shops and shopping; weather and should, shouldn't; imperatives inking 54 pp30-31 iffee events past simple: regular verbs -ed ending of regular verbs 55 life events past simple: irregular verbs; wh- questions in	LESSON	VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR	PRONUNCIATION
1B. pp6-7 common verb phrases present simple: he; she, it third person -s pp8-9 adjectives for feeling; time phrases; family possessive 's, s' intonation to show interest pp8-9 adjectives for feeling; time phrases; family possessive 's, s' intonation to show interest pp10-11 food and drink countable and uncountable nouns, a, an; some, any the weak /a/ sound: a, an, some pp10-12 everyday activities adverbs and phrases of frequency tinking pp14-15 restaurant words like, hate, love + -ing polite intonation pp14-15 rooms and furniture this, that, these, those; here, there /// and /E/ gp13-9 common adjectives (1) hove got sentence stress gp22-21 amounts; numbers how much, how many; how + adjective intonation to check understanding how # adjective was, were gp24-25 seasons show and shopping; weather and should, shouldn't; imperatives linking gp24-26 seasons seasons irregular verbs irregular verbs gp32-31 life events past simple: irregular verbs; wh- questions intonation fo		jobs and studies	present simple: I, you, we, they	weak forms and linking: do you
pp6-7 discrives for feelings; time possessive 's, s' intonation to show interest TC TD phrases; family possessive 's, s' intonation to show interest ZA phrases; family food and drink countable and uncountable nouns, a, a, some, any the weak /a/ sound: a, an, some ZB pp10-11 everyday activities adverbs and phrases of frequency linking ZC ZD pp12-13 restaurant words like, hate, love + -ing polite intonation ZG ZD pp12-13 restaurant words like, hate, love + -ing polite intonation ZG ZD pp12-13 rooms and furniture this, that, these, those; here, there /// and /iz/ ZG ZD pp22-21 common adjectives (1) have got sentence stress ZG ZD pp22-23 social phrases there is, there are /hythm in phrases ZP = 24-25 mounts; numbers how much, how many; how + adjective intonation to check understanding how + adjective ZG ZD pp22-23 seasons should, shouldn't; imperatives linking ZP = 24-25 mounts; numbers how tadjective ed ending of regular verbs ZG ZD seasons past simple				
ppB=9ppTrases; familycountable nouns; a, an, some, any2A pp10-11food and drinkcountable and uncountable nouns; a, an, some, anythe weak /a/ sound; a, an, some inking2B pp12-13everyday activitiesadverbs and phrases of frequency pp14-15linking2C 12D pp14-15restaurant wordslike, hate, love + -ing polite intonation3A pp20-21rooms and furniture pp18-19this, that, these, those, here, there pp20-21/// and /li/3B pp20-21common adjectives (1) have gothave gotsentence stress3G 13D pp20-21social phrasesthere is, there are how much, how many; how much, how many; how adjectiveintonation to check understanding how + adjective4A pp24-25amounts; numbershow much, how many; how much, how many; how + adjectivelinking5A pp28-29seasonsshould, shouldn't; imperatives imperativeslinking5B pp38-31life eventspast simple: regular verbs wh-questions-ed ending of regular verbs5C 15D pp38-32iffe eventspast simple: regular verbs wh-questionsintonation for apologising6A pp38-39common adjectives (2); transport collocationscomparative adjectivessentence stress5C 15D pp38-39placespresent continuousweak form of are6B pp38-39common adjectives (2); transport collocationscomparative adjectivessentence stress7A pp38-35skills and qualitiesarticles: a, an, the, zeroweak forms; a,	1В рр6–7	common verb phrases	present simple: <i>ne</i> , <i>sne</i> , <i>it</i>	third person -s
2A food and drink countable and uncountable nouns; a, an, some, any the weak /a/ sound: a, an, some 2B everyday activities adverbs and phrases of frequency linking pp12-13 restaurant words like, hate, love + -ing polite intonation pp14-15 restaurant words like, hate, love + -ing polite intonation pp14-15 restaurant words this, that, these, those; here, there /// and /fi/ pp18-19 rooms and furniture this, that, these, those; here, there /// and /fi/ pp20-21 social phrases there is, there are rhythm in phrases pp22-23 social phrases there is, there are rhythm in phrases pp24-25 ime phrases (1) and dates past simple of be: was, were weak and strong sounds: was, were advertward amounts; numbers how much, how many; how + adjective intonation to check understanding pp26-27 shops and shopping; weather and seasons should, shouldn't; imperatives linking pp32-33 time phrases (2) past simple: irregular verbs; wh- questions irregular verbs pp33-39 life events<	1C 1D		possessive 's, s'	intonation to show interest
pp10-11 nouns; a, an, some, any Inking 28 everyday activities adverbs and phrases of frequency linking 2C12D restaurant words like, hate, love + -ing polite intonation pp14-15 rooms and furniture this, that, these, those, here, there /// and /tt/ 3A rooms and furniture this, that, these, those, here, there /// and /tt/ 3B common adjectives (1) have got sentence stress 3C13D social phrases there is, there are rhythm in phrases pp24-25 amounts; numbers how much, how many; how + adjective intonation to check understanding pp26-27 anounts; numbers how much, how many; how + adjective intonation to check understanding pp26-29 seasons seasons seasons eed ending of regular verbs pp26-31 time phrases (2) past simple: irregular verbs; wh- questions irregular verbs pp32-33 life events past simple: irregular verbs; wh- questions intonation for apologising pp36-37 common adjectives (2); transport collocations present continuous <td< td=""><td>pp8–9</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></td<>	pp8–9			
28 everyday activities adverbs and phrases of frequency linking pp12-13 restaurant words like, hate, love + -ing polite intonation pp14-15 restaurant words like, hate, love + -ing polite intonation REVIEW 1-2 pp16-17 rooms and furniture this, that, these, there, there // and /i:/ App18-19 rooms and furniture this, that, these, there, there // and /i:/ gc13D social phrases there is, there are rhythm in phrases pp22-23 amounts; numbers how much, how many; how much, how many; how + adjective intonation to check understanding pp24-25 seasons should should nt; imperatives linking pp28-27 shous and shopping; weather and should, should nt; imperatives intonation to check understanding pp28-27 shous and shopping; weather and should, should nt; imperatives intonation for apologising pp28-23 life events past simple: irregular verbs; wh- questions irregular verbs pp38-39 life events past simple irregular verbs; wh- questions istonation for apologising pp38-39 <td< td=""><td></td><td>food and drink</td><td></td><td>the weak /ə/ sound: <i>a</i>, <i>an</i>, <i>some</i></td></td<>		food and drink		the weak /ə/ sound: <i>a</i> , <i>an</i> , <i>some</i>
pp12-13 Protection Protection 2C 12D pp12-15 restaurant words <i>like, hate, love + -ing</i> polite intonation Pp18-19 rooms and furniture <i>this, that, these, those; here, there A</i> / and <i>Jiz</i> / 3B rooms and furniture <i>this, that, these, those; here, there A</i> / and <i>Jiz</i> / 3B common adjectives (1) <i>hove got</i> sentence stress 3C 13D social phrases <i>there is, there are</i> rhythm in phrases <i>pp22-23</i> social phrases (1) and dates past simple of <i>be: was, were</i> weak and strong sounds: was, were <i>pp22-25</i> amounts; numbers <i>how much, how many;</i> intonation to check understanding <i>pp22-25</i> seasons <i>how much, how many;</i> intonation to check understanding <i>pp22-25</i> seasons <i>how much, how many;</i> intonation to check understanding <i>pp22-25</i> seasons <i>how much, how many;</i> intonation to check understanding <i>pp22-25</i> seasons <i>how much, how many;</i> intonation to check understanding <i>pp22-25</i> seasons <i>how much, how many;</i> intonation to check understanding <i>pp22-25</i> seasons <i>how much, how many;</i> intonation to check understanding <i>pp22-25</i> seasons <i>how much, how many;</i> intonation	2B	everyday activities		linking
pp14-15 rooms and furniture this, that, these, those; here, there /L/ and /it/ 3B rooms and furniture this, that, these, those; here, there /L/ and /it/ 3B common adjectives (1) have got sentence stress 3C13D social phrases there is, there are rhythm in phrases pp22-23 social phrases (1) and dates past simple of be: was, were weak and strong sounds: was, were 4A time phrases (1) and dates past simple of be: was, were intonation to check understanding how + adjective 8D amounts; numbers how much, how many; how + adjective linking 9D 28-29 seasons should shouldn't; imperatives linking 7EVIEW 3-4 p3O-31 -ed ending of regular verbs -ed ending of regular verbs 7EVIEW 3-4 p3O-31 -ed ending of regular verbs who: questions intonation for apologising 7S excuses; saying the time adjectives and modifiers intonation for apologising 7B excuses; saying the time prepositions and adverbs of movement sentence stress FOI-01 transport collocations preresent continuous	pp12–13			
3A rooms and furniture this, that, these, those, here, there /L/ and /lz/ 3B common adjectives (1) have got sentence stress 3C13D social phrases there is, there are rhythm in phrases 4A pp24-23 amounts; numbers past simple of be: was, were weak and strong sounds: was, were 4B amounts; numbers how much, how many; how + adjective intonation to check understanding how + adjective 5P28-23 seasons shops and shopping; weather and should, shouldn't; imperatives linking 5P32-33 time phrases (2) past simple: regular verbs -ed ending of regular verbs pp34-35 life events past simple: irregular verbs; wh- questions intonation for apologising 5C15D excuses; saying the time adjectives and modifiers intonation for apologising 6A common adjectives (2); comparative adjectives sentence stress pp36-37 clothes and appearance prepositions and adverbs of movement stress to correct information movement REVIEW 5-6 pp44-45 stress to correct information movement movement RE	2C 2D pp14–15	restaurant words	like, hate, love + -ing	polite intonation
pp18-19Interview3B pp20-21common adjectives (1)have got3C 3D pp22-23social phrasesthere is, there arerhythm in phrasespp22-24time phrases (1) and datespast simple of be: was, wereweak and strong sounds: was, were4A pp26-27amounts; numbershow much, how many; how radjectiveintonation to check understanding pp26-274C 4D shops and shopping; weather and seasonsshould, shouldn't; imperativeslinking5A pp26-23time phrases (2)past simple: regular verbs-ed ending of regular verbs5B pp36-33life eventspast simple: irregular verbs; wh- questionsirregular verbs5B pp36-33clothes and appearancepresent continuousweak form of are6B pp42-45common adjectives (2); transport collocationscomparative adjectivessentence stress6C 6D pp42-43placesprepositions and adverbs of movementstress to correct information movement7A pp46-47skills and qualitiesarticles: a, an, the, zeroweak forms: a, an, the7B pp46-45phanal verbspresent simple and present continuousconnected speech, the /t/ sound continuous7C 7D pp50-51phoningverbs and to infinitivefriendly intonation8A pp52-53tarvel activitiesbe going toweak form of to8B pp56-57hotel language; hotel roomsadverbs of mannerthe contraction 'll	REVIEW 1–	2 pp16–17	•	•
pp20-21Image: constraint of the second s	3A pp18–19	rooms and furniture	this, that, these, those; here, there	/I/ and /i:/
pp22-23Line phrases (1) and datespast simple of be: was, wereWeak and strong sounds: was, werepp24-25amounts; numbershow much, how many; how + adjectiveintonation to check understanding how + adjectivepp26-29seasonsshops and shopping; weather and 	3B pp20–21	common adjectives (1)	have got	sentence stress
4A pp24-25time phrases (1) and datespast simple of be: was, wereweak and strong sounds: was, were4B pp26-27amounts; numbershow much, how many; 	3C 3D pp22–23	social phrases	there is, there are	rhythm in phrases
pp26-27how + adjectivehow + adjective4C 4D pp28-29shops and shopping; weather and seasonsshould, shouldn't; imperativeslinkingREVIEW 3-4 pp32-33time phrases (2)past simple: regular verbs-ed ending of regular verbs5A 	4A pp24–25	time phrases (1) and dates	past simple of <i>be: was, were</i>	-
pp28-29seasonsrest REVIEW 3-4 pp30-31 5A time phrases (2)past simple: regular verbs-ed ending of regular verbspp32-33tife eventspast simple: irregular verbs;irregular verbs 5B tife eventspast simple: irregular verbs;irregular verbs 5C 5D excuses; saying the timeadjectives and modifiersintonation for apologising 6A clothes and appearancepresent continuousweak form of <i>are</i> 6B common adjectives (2); transport collocationscomparative adjectivessentence stress 6C 6D pp42-43placesprepositions and adverbs of movementstress to correct information 7A 	4B pp26–27	amounts; numbers		intonation to check understanding
REVIEW 3-4 pp30-315A pp32-33time phrases (2)past simple: regular verbs-ed ending of regular verbs5B pp34-35life eventspast simple: irregular verbs; wh- questionsirregular verbs5C I 5D 	4C 4D pp28–29		should, shouldn't; imperatives	linking
pp32-33Intervent Section5B pp34-35life eventspast simple: irregular verbs; wh- questionsirregular verbs5C I SD pp36-37excuses; saying the timeadjectives and modifiersintonation for apologising6A pp38-39clothes and appearancepresent continuousweak form of are6B pp40-41common adjectives (2); transport collocationscomparative adjectivessentence stress6C I 6D pp42-43placesprepositions and adverbs of movementstress to correct information7A pp46-47skills and qualitiesarticles: a, an, the, zeroweak forms: a, an, the7B pp48-49phrasal verbspresent simple and present continuousconnected speech, the /t/ sound7C I 7D pp50-51phoning pts-55verbs and to infinitivefriendly intonation8B pp54-55travel activitiessuperlative adjectives-t in superlatives8B pp56-57hotel language; hotel roomsadverbs of mannerthe contraction 'll		4 pp30–31	1	
pp34-35wh- questionsSC SD pp36-37excuses; saying the time adjectives and modifiersintonation for apologisingGA pp38-39clothes and appearance pp38-39present continuousweak form of areGB pp40-41common adjectives (2); transport collocationscomparative adjectivessentence stressGC GD pp42-43placesprepositions and adverbs of movementstress to correct informationREVIEW 5-6 pp44-45pp44-457A pp46-47skills and qualitiesarticles: a, an, the, zeroweak forms: a, an, the7B pp48-49phrasal verbspresent simple and present continuousconnected speech, the /t/ sound7C 7D pp50-51phoningverbs and to infinitivefriendly intonation8A pp54-55describing placessuperlative adjectives-t in superlatives8B pp54-55travel activitiesbe going toweak form of to8C 8D pp56-57hotel language; hotel roomsadverbs of mannerthe contraction 'll	5A pp32–33	time phrases (2)	past simple: regular verbs	<i>-ed</i> ending of regular verbs
pp36-37Provide6A pp38-39clothes and appearancepresent continuousweak form of are6B pp40-41common adjectives (2); transport collocationscomparative adjectivessentence stress6C 6D 	5B pp34–35	life events		irregular verbs
pp38-39Provide and provide adjectivesProvide adjectives6B pp40-41common adjectives (2); transport collocationscomparative adjectivessentence stress6C 6D pp42-43placesprepositions and adverbs of 	5C 5D pp36–37	excuses; saying the time	adjectives and modifiers	intonation for apologising
6B pp40-41common adjectives (2); transport collocationscomparative adjectivessentence stress6C 6D pp42-43placesprepositions and adverbs of 		clothes and appearance	present continuous	weak form of <i>are</i>
pp42-43movementREVIEW 5-6 pp44-45movement7A pp46-47skills and qualitiesarticles: a, an, the, zeroweak forms: a, an, the7B pp48-49phrasal verbspresent simple and present continuousconnected speech, the /t/ sound7C 7D pp50-51phoningverbs and to infinitivefriendly intonation8A pp52-53describing placessuperlative adjectives-t in superlatives8B pp54-55travel activitiesbe going toweak form of to8C 8D pp56-57hotel language; hotel roomsadverbs of mannerthe contraction 'll	6B pp40–41		comparative adjectives	sentence stress
REVIEW 5-6 pp44-457A pp46-47skills and qualitiesarticles: a, an, the, zeroweak forms: a, an, the7B pp48-49phrasal verbspresent simple and present continuousconnected speech, the /t/ sound7C 7D 	6C 6D pp42–43	places		stress to correct information
pp46-47phrasal verbspresent simple and present continuousconnected speech, the /t/ sound7C 7D pp50-51phoningverbs and to infinitivefriendly intonation8A pp52-53describing placessuperlative adjectives-t in superlatives8B 	REVIEW 5 -	6 pp44–45		
pp48-49continuousrclrD pp50-51phoningverbs and to infinitivefriendly intonation8A pp52-53describing placessuperlative adjectives-t in superlatives8B pp54-55travel activitiesbe going toweak form of to8C18D pp56-57hotel language; hotel roomsadverbs of mannerthe contraction 'll	7A pp46–47	skills and qualities	articles: <i>a, an, the,</i> zero	weak forms: <i>a</i> , <i>an</i> , <i>the</i>
7C 7D pp50-51phoningverbs and to infinitivefriendly intonation8A pp52-53describing placessuperlative adjectives-t in superlatives8B pp54-55travel activitiesbe going toweak form of to8C 8D 	7B pp48–49	phrasal verbs		connected speech, the /t/ sound
8A pp52-53describing placessuperlative adjectives-t in superlatives8B pp54-55travel activitiesbe going toweak form of to8C 8D pp56-57hotel language; hotel roomsadverbs of mannerthe contraction 'll	7C 7D pp50–51	phoning	verbs and to infinitive	friendly intonation
8B pp54-55travel activitiesbe going toweak form of to8C 8D pp56-57hotel language; hotel roomsadverbs of mannerthe contraction 'll	8A pp52–53	describing places	superlative adjectives	-t in superlatives
8C 8D pp56-57hotel language; hotel roomsadverbs of mannerthe contraction 'll	8B	travel activities	be going to	weak form of <i>to</i>
	8C 8D	hotel language; hotel rooms	adverbs of manner	the contraction 'll
		8 pp58–59		

CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1-4	CUMULATIVE REVIEW 5–8	CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1–8
pp60-61	pp62–63	pp64–67
AUDIOSCRIPTS pp68–77	ANSWER KEY pp78–95	

click here for more books https://t.me/EnglishZoneTextBooks

Lesson 1A

VOCABULARY

jobs and studies

В

1 A Complete the phrases with the words in the box.

art basketball bus business farm hotel office tennis train university	
player	
worker	
driver	
student	
manager	
Choose the correct word to complete the sentence	es.

- 1 I'm a taxi _____ and I work at night.
- **a** worker **b** driver **c** player
- **2** Are you a university _____?
- **a** driver **b** player **c** student
- **3** I'd like to be a business **a** manager **b** player **c** d
- a managerb playerc driver4 I'm an office and I work from 9 to 5.
- **a** driver **b** student **c** worker
- 5 Would you like to be a train _____?
- **a** driver **b** player **c** student
- 6 My favourite tennis ______ is Ashleigh Barty.
- **a** worker **b** player **c** driver

2A Complete the words with one letter in each gap. Some letters are given.

- **1** a<u>t</u>r
- **2** s passat
- **3** p_l_t
- **4** e <u>g</u> n er
- **5** p l ce o f cer
- 6 wr_t_r
- 7 l___w__er
- 8 n__rs__
- **9** re_i__d
- 10 un plo ed

B Match the jobs from the box with the sentences (1–6).

digital designer doctor pilot politician scientist singer

- 1 I help people who are ill.
- 2 I make music.
- **3** I work in the government.
- **4** I study new medicines.
- **5** I make websites for different companies.
- **6** I fly planes.

GRAMMAR

present simple: I, you, we, they

3A 📑 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 They don't / are / do scientists.
- 2 We don't / aren't / do speak Japanese. We speak Korean.
- 3 A: Do you like sport?B: Yes, I like / am / do.
- 4 My parents do / are / don't from Berlin.
- 5 A: Are Ricky and Sam brothers?B: No, they aren't / don't / are.
- 6 They are / don't / aren't Spanish. They're Portuguese.

B Complete the text with one word in each gap.

I have an international family. My wife and I				
1	Polish, but w	e ² live	in Poland.	
We ³	in Scotlaı	nd. Our childrer	ı	
4	Scottish and they both ⁵ English.			
6	my parents li	ve in Poland? N	lo, they	
7	. They ⁸	in France an	d speak Polish,	
French and English!				

C Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 you / speak / Do / Spanish ?
- 2 from / are / Where / they ?
- 3 Chiara / Do / know / you ?
- 4 come / do / from / you / Where ?
- **5** your children / Do / go / near here / school / to ?
- 6 have / we / tonight / Do / homework?
- **7** pizza / like / your parents / Do ?
- 8 do / How / you / know / Tim?
- Match the answers (a-h) with the questions (1-8) in Ex 3C.
 - **a** I'm from Turkey.
 - **b** We work together.
 - c Yes, they do. They love it!
 - **d** No, I don't. I speak Greek.
 - e Yes, I do. She's nice.
 - ${\bf f}~$ Yes, we do. It's Exercise 8.
 - **g** They're from Egypt.
 - **h** No, they don't.



PRONUNCIATION

- **4A 1.01** | weak forms and linking: *do you* | Listen to the sentences. Choose the stressed word in each of the sentences.
 - 1 How do you know Sarah?
 - 2 Do you like your job?
 - **3** Do you work with Paul?
 - **4** Where do you live?
 - 5 What do you do?
 - **6** Do you come from Poland?
 - B 🜗 1.01 | Listen again and repeat.

LISTENING

5 A **1.02** | Listen to the conversation. Choose the things the three people talk about.

- **a** how they know each other
- **b** their children
- c countries/nationalities
- $\boldsymbol{d} ~ \text{work}$
- ${\boldsymbol{e}}\,$ food and drink

B 1.02 | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Ashley and Eliana don't know each other.
- 2 Scott and Eliana work together.
- **3** Scott and Ashley work together.
- 4 Eliana is from the USA.
- **5** Eliana is here for a meeting.
- 6 Ashley is a nurse.

C 1.02 | Listen again. Complete the sentences.

- 1 How _____ things?
- 2 Not bad.
- 3 Eliana, _____ is Ashley.
- 4 Nice to _____ you.
- 5 How do you ______ each other?
- 6 Are you _____ the USA?
- 7 _____you live here?
- 8 What do you _____, Ashley?



WRITING

write a personal profile; use capital letters

- **6A** Read the personal profile from a blog. Complete the information.
 - 1 Full name:
 - **2** Job:
 - 3 Nationality:
 - 4 Home town:
 - 5 Interests:
 - 6 Email:

ABOUT ME

hi, my name's Frank Bacall and I'm a travel writer. I'm from cape Town in South Africa. I love my job because I go to lots of different countries. I often visit Thailand, france and the USA. I love to meet



people and learn languages. I speak Spanish, Portuguese and a little thai. I'm interested in sport, too. I play tennis and badminton.

welcome to my blog. i hope you like it! If you want to know more about the places I visit, then please contact me at fcb@mailer.com.

- **B** Find and correct six mistakes with capital letters in the profile.
- C Imagine you are Bruna Pereira. Write your profile using the information below. Write 80–100 words.



Full name:	Bruna Pereira
Job:	singer
Nationality:	Brazilian
Home town:	Rio de Janeiro
Languages:	Portuguese, Spanish, a little English
Interests:	tennis, cinema
Email:	b.pereira@songcamp.com

Lesson 1B

GRAMMAR | present simple: *he, she, it* **VOCABULARY** | common verb phrases **PRONUNCIATION** | third person -*s*

VOCABULARY

common verb phrases

1 A Match (1–8) with (a–h) to make sentences.

- 1 I'd like to play
- 2 Jiya and Carlos study business
- **3** We teach
- 4 I work
- 5 You live
- 6 Do they have
- 7 I always go
- 8 At the weekend, I get up
- **a** and economics at university.
- **b** a car?
- **c** late.
- **d** from home two days a week.
- **e** guitar.
- **f** to bed early on Sundays.
- **g** students from lots of countries.
- $\boldsymbol{h}\,$ alone in a small flat.

B 📑 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 Do youout a lot at the weekend?a liveb goc get up
- **2** I _____ from home, not in an office.
- **a** work **b** play **c** live
- **3** At the weekend I usually running.**a** play **b** have **c** go
- **4** We in a small village.
- **a** have **b** go **c** live
- **5** Do you tennis?
- **a** play **b** go **c** have
- 6 We need to _____ up early tomorrow.
 - a live b get c have
- C Put the words in brackets in the correct order to make sentences.

What do you do? What's your day like? Write your answers! [tom93] I live in London. 1 (university / 1 / a / teach / at). I love my job! [laylaamr] I live in a village. 2 (day / 1 / up / early / every / get). I go running before work. [stargr]] I'm a singer. 3 (also /guitar / 1 / the / play). I'm in a band. [greenlife] I live with friends. 4 (a / go / we / out / lot). We like parties! [sol3] I work for a small company. 5 (money / make / of / a

GRAMMAR

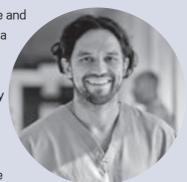
present simple: he, she, it

2A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 What time <u>your brother finishes</u> work?
 - a is your brother finishb does your brother finishc your brother finish
- 2 Kate and her friends <u>lives</u> together.
 - **a** live **b** are live **c** is live
- **3** Robin <u>don't</u> go out a lot.
 - **a** isn't **b** aren't **c** doesn't
- 4 Your children like their school?
 - **a** Do your children **b** Does your children
 - **c** Are your children

B Choose the correct words to complete the text.

My brother is a nurse and he ¹work / works at a hospital in our city. He ²start / starts work at 10 a.m. every day and ³finishes / finish at 9 p.m. On Saturdays, when he ⁴doesn't / isn't at the hospital, he ⁵eats / eat lunch



at a café with friends. I usually ⁶visit / visits him on Sundays and we ⁷play / plays tennis and ⁸cook / cooks lunch together. On Sunday evenings he ⁹study / studies Italian for an hour and then ¹⁰go / goes to bed early.

C Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

get up go go out start study teach	
a Shew from home.	vork at 9 a.m. She
b After that, she	with friends.
c Sher breakfast.	unning, then
d In the evening, she	French.
e Anika	_ at 5 a.m.
f In the afternoon, sh	ne students online.

D Put sentences (a-f) in Ex 2C in the correct order to describe Anika's day.

lot / don't / l).

PRONUNCIATION

3A 1.03 | third person -s | Listen and choose the correct -s sound for each verb (/s/, /z/ or /1z/).

- 1 studies6 finishes2 sits7 goes3 works8 stops4 stays9 watches5 does10 lives
- B 🚺 1.03 | Listen again and repeat.

READING

4 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

Rowan is a shop assistant. He _____ in a supermarket. He starts at 12 p.m. and he finishes at 8 p.m.

- a lives b works c meets
- **5A** Read the article. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?
 - 1 Annie is Rowan's wife.
 - **2** Annie's boyfriend is Spanish.
 - **3** Rowan works for eight hours every day.
 - 4 Annie always sees Rowan at the weekend.
 - **5** Annie and Rowan go to the same school.
 - 6 They like doing the same things.
 - 7 Rowan likes sport.
 - 8 Annie likes cooking.
 - B Read the article again. Choose one option (a-c) to complete the questions (1-6).
 - 1 What's Annie's job?
 - **a** a teacher
 - **b** a shop assistant
 - c a lawyer
 - 2 What does she do in the morning?
 - **a** She has breakfast and goes to work.
 - **b** She reads books or studies.
 - c She goes to Spanish classes.
 - **3** What does she do on Thursdays?
 - **a** She studies.
 - **b** She cooks dinner.
 - **c** She watches TV or reads books.
 - 4 How does Rowan know Annie?
 - \boldsymbol{a} from work
 - ${\bf b}\,$ from his Spanish class
 - **c** from school
 - 5 What does Annie hate?
 - ${\boldsymbol{a}}$ watching films
 - ${\boldsymbol b}$ cooking food
 - c going to the cinema
 - **6** What does Annie say about being different to Rowan?
 - **a** She doesn't like it.
 - **b** She likes it.
 - c It's OK.

Best friends but different!

-

Rowan

My best friend is Annie. She's great. We have very different lives though. She's a lawyer. She gets up at 7 a.m. every day.



She has breakfast and then goes to work. She often works late (sometimes until 9 p.m.!), but not on Thursdays. She has a Spanish class on Thursday evenings. She studies Spanish because her boyfriend is from Argentina. I don't study. I'm a shop assistant and I work in a supermarket in the centre of town. I don't start work until 12, so I usually get up late – around 10.30 a.m. I go to work by bus and work hard all day. I finish work at 8 p.m., then come home and cook dinner. Annie and I have very different lives, but we still make time to see each other.

Annie

I know my good friend Rowan from school. We live in the same town and we always see each other at weekends.



We have different interests, so it's usually interesting to spend time together! Rowan plays a lot of sports, like football and tennis, but I like going for walks or to the cinema. So, how do we decide what to do in our free time? It's easy. One weekend I choose what to do, and the next weekend Rowan chooses. This weekend I want to watch a film, and next weekend Rowan wants to cook dinner. He loves cooking, but I hate it, so he cooks and I eat. It's perfect. I think we're good friends because we do things together that we don't usually do alone.

Lesson 1C

VOCABULARY

adjectives for feelings

1 Complete the sentences with the adjectives from the box.

all right angry bored hungry ill relaxed thirsty tired

- 1 Can I have some water? I'm really
- **2** Greg isn't at work today. He's at the doctor's because he's _____.
- 3 I'm sorry I'm late. Please don't be
- **4** I'm _____. Let's do something interesting.

- I

noon.

- 5 I feel _____ not happy, not sad. Just normal.
- 6 I want to go to bed. I'm very
- 7 What time is dinner? I'm really
- **8** I always feel ______ after a hot bath.

time phrases

- **2** A Choose the correct answer to complete the sentences.
 - 1 I get up / on / at 5 a.m. every day.
 - 2 Do we have a class **next** / **at** / **on** week?
 - 3 Let's play tennis on / / next tomorrow.
 - 4 I teach German at / on / this Tuesdays.
 - 5 I have an English class at / / on Thursday morning.
 - 6 What shall we do this / next / at evening?
 - **B** Complete the messages with one word in each gap. If no word is necessary, write (-).

\leftarrow

English class

Aiko: Do we have a class 1 _____ today?

Gloria: I can't come. I need to study for a French test ³______ tonight.

Victor: Oh! Good luck, Gloria!

Aiko: Gloria and Victor, do you want to do something 4 weekend?

Gloria: Sure! Can we meet for a coffee 5______Saturday?

Victor: I can't do Saturday. Can we meet Sunday afternoon, 7_____1 o'clock?

Aiko: That's fine with me.

Gloria: Great! See you ⁸ the weekend!

How to ...

make suggestions

3A **1.04** | Listen to the conversation. Answer the questions with Mike (M) or Fran (F).

- 1 Who feels hungry?
- 2 Who has a class at twelve?
- 3 Who asks to meet at the café on East Street?
- 4 Who loves the café?
- **5** Who asks to meet at two?
- **B I.05** | Listen to the recording. Write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.

1	
2	
2	

PRONUNCIATION

- **4A 1.06** | **intonation to show interest** | Listen to the phrases. Do the people sound interested (I) or not interested (N)?
 - 1 Sure!
- 4 Perfect!
- **2** Good idea. **5** Sure, that's fine.
 - 6 OK.
- B 🚺 1.07 | Listen and repeat the interested phrases.

SPEAKING

3 I'd love to!

5A 1.08 | Complete the conversation with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

- bye can't OK things would A: Hi! B: Hello, how are 1_____? A: I'm bored. How about you? B: I'm all right. 2_____you like to have dinner? A: Good idea. How about meeting at 5 o'clock? B: Sorry, I 3_____. What about 6.30? A: Sure. Can we meet at the restaurant? B: 4_____. A: Perfect! See you then. B: See you then. 5____.
- **B** 1.09 | You are B in the conversation in Ex 5A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.
- C Listen to your recording and compare it with the model in Ex 5A.

Lesson 1D

GRAMMAR

possessives: 's, s'

- 1 A 📑 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.
 - 1 My brothers' name is Harry.

a brothers **b** brother c brother's

- 2 This isn't my room. It's the childrens'. **a** children's **b** children **c** childrens
- 3 Where are the keys of Anna?
 - **a** the keys' of Anna **b** Anna's keys
 - c Annas' keys
- 4 Mia's Tim sister.
 - **a** Mia Tim's **b** Mia's Tim's **c** Mia's Tims'

B Complete the conversation with seven apostrophes (four for possession and three for contractions).

- A: Whos that in the photo?
- B: Thats my sister and her family. Her names Charlotte. Her husbands name is Andy, and they're both teachers.
- A: Do they have children?
- B: They have a daughter. Their daughters name is Emily. They also have a dog. Their dogs name is Buster.
- A: Do you live near your parents?
- B: Yes, we all do. My parents house is in the street next to us, so we all live quite near.







7

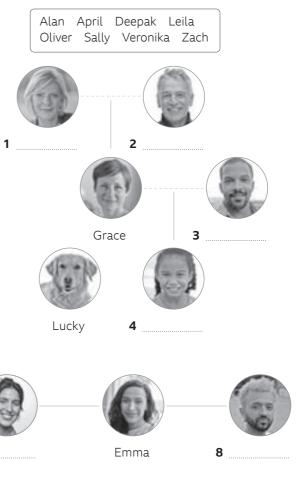
Jay

LISTENING

2A 1.10 | Listen to Grace and Marco talk about their families. Complete the table.

	Grace	Marco
From:		
Lives in:		
Job:		
500.		

B 🜗 1.10 | Listen again. Complete the gaps in the family tree (1-8) with the names in the box.

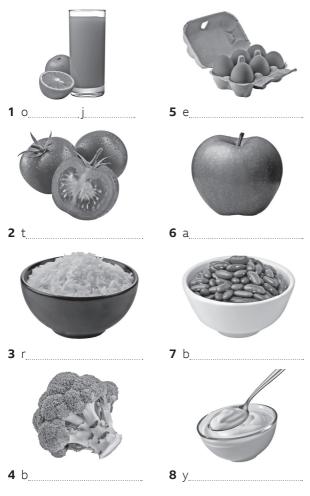


Lesson 2A

VOCABULARY

food and drink

1 A Complete the words. The first letter is given.



B Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

applejuice bread carrots cereal chicken grapes noodles oil pear sugar

- A: What do you have for breakfast?
- B: First I have coffee. I need it to wake up in the morning! But I don't have any 1..... in it. Then I have 2..... or 3..... and butter.
- A: I don't eat breakfast. I don't have time in the morning. But I drink green tea or ⁴......
- B: No breakfast! Are you hungry at work?
- A: Yes! Sometimes I eat lunch early, at 11 a.m. I go to a café near my office for lunch. I like hot 5______ with vegetables. I'm a vegetarian, though, so I don't have any 6_____ with it.
- A: Yum! But I need a big lunch. So I always eat a ⁹_____ or some ¹⁰_____ as well.

GRAMMAR

countable and uncountable nouns; *a*, *an*, *some*, *any*

2 A Choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

- 1 We haven't got **a** / **two** / **any** orange juice.
- 2 Would you like a / some / three sugar?
- 3 A: Do you like a / / some cheese?B: Yes, I love it!
- 4 Can I have a / any / some broccoli, please?
- **5** Do you want **any** / **an** / **a** apple?
- 6 Let's buy any / some / a noodles.
- **B** Choose the best option (a or b) to correct the mistakes (1–8) in the conversation.
 - A: Hi Carl. Are you at the supermarket?
 - B: Yes, I am.
 - A: Great. Can you get ¹<u>a</u> bread? We don't have ²<u>some</u>.
 - B: Sure. Just that?
 - A: Yes. Oh, wait. Can you also buy ³any chillies, please?
 - B: OK ... chillies. Ahh. They don't have ⁴anything fish, so we can't eat that tonight. But they have a ⁵lots of prawns. Do you want ⁶<u>a</u>?
 - A: Yes. Good idea. Can you buy ⁷an rice, too? And maybe ⁸any melon, to eat after dinner?
 - B: Sure. See you soon.

1	a	one	b	some
2	a	any	b	one
3	a	lot	b	some
4	a	some	b	any
5	a	lot	b	some
6	a	an	b	any
7	a	some	b	a
8	a	some	b	something

C 2.01 | Listen and check.

PRONUNCIATION

3A ◆ 2.02 | the weak /ə/ sound: a, an, some | Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 Would you like _____ cheese?
- 2 Can I have _____ orange, please?
- **3** I'd like _____ melon.
- 4 Let's buy _____ mushrooms.
- 5 I don't want _____ egg.
- **6** We need _____ oil.
- 7 Would you like _____lemonade?
- 8 Can you buy _____ cucumber and _____ avocado?

B 🚺 2.02 | Listen again and repeat.

LISTENING

4A ▲ 2.03 | Listen to the conversation. Match the people (1-3) with the food they like (a-c).

- 1 Theo a vegetables
- 2 Yuki **b** meat
- **3** Jake **c** fish
- B 2.03 | Listen again. Which items do they NOT mention?

broccoli cheese fish ice cream lamb lemonade olives meat orange juice pasta prawns strawberries

C 2.03 | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Theo likes lamb.
- **2** Yuki doesn't eat fish.
- **3** They sell prawns at the market.
- 4 Jake doesn't like broccoli.
- **5** They don't buy anything for dessert.
- 6 They buy lemonade for Jake.

WRITING

write an online comment; use linking words: *and*, *but*, *or*

- **5** A Read the social media post and the replies. Match the people with the food they like.
 - 1 onions
 - 2 pears
 - **3** fish _____,
 - 4 cucumber
 - 5 sparkling water _____, ____,
 - 6 tomatoes _____,
 - **B** Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
 - **1** This food is delicious, **but** / **or** it's not very healthy.
 - 2 I usually have my lunch with sparkling water and / but lemonade.
 - **3** For dinner I usually have salmon, rice **and** / **but** broccoli.
 - 4 I like fish, **but / or** I don't like prawns.
 - 5 Do you want pasta but / or noodles for dinner?
 - 6 I have yoghurt **but / or** fruit for breakfast every day.
 - **C** Find more examples of *and*, *but* and *or* in the online comments.
- **6A** You are going to write a reply to the post. First make notes to answer these questions.
 - What is it?
 - When do you eat it?
 - What drink do you have with it?
 - **B** Write your comment. Use *and*, *but* and *or*. Write about 50 words.

What's your favourite healthy food?



This is a photo of my favourite healthy food – a rainbow salad. I usually eat meat or fish for dinner, but not today! I like this salad because it's easy to make. You use lots of vegetables with different colours! This one has green cucumber, red tomatoes, red onions, yellow peppers and green herbs. I like to drink sparkling water with it.

Jaylan, Australia



That looks very nice, Jaylan. I want to make it and eat it! My favourite healthy food is Moqueca. It's a fish soup that we eat here in the north of Brazil. You can buy it in other countries, but it's not the same. It's fish, red peppers, onions or other vegetables in a tomato sauce. Mmm, I can smell it now!

Giselle, Brazil



My favourite healthy food is a fruit salad. I make it with strawberries, melon and pears. I sometimes use oranges too, but when I don't have any, I add a little bit of lemonade or sparkling water. It's great on a hot day when I feel thirsty.

Tom, Canada

Lesson 2B

GRAMMAR | adverbs and phrases of frequency VOCABULARY | everyday activities PRONUNCIATION | linking

VOCABULARY

everyday activities

1 A Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

check get up go (x2) go to meet spend (x2)

- 1 A: Do you want to ______ shopping with me on Saturday?B: Sorry, I can't. I always _____ my mum for
 - lunch on Saturdays.
- 2 A: Does Amanda always ______ early?
 B: Yes, she does. She ______ running before work.
- **3** A: I work a lot, but I'd like to _____ more time with my family.
 - B: Me too. The problem is that my son _____ a lot of time online!
- **4** A: You need to _____ the meeting at ten.
 - B: OK. I just need to _____ my emails first.

B Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 Do you _____ time with your family at the weekend?
 - **a** go **b** spend **c** meet
- **2** I usually <u>running</u> every morning before breakfast.
- a do b get up c go
- **3** _____your messages before the meeting.
- **a** get up **b** spend time **c** meet
- **5** I don't want to _____ Jen's party at the weekend.
- a go tob getc go6 It's Sunday tomorrow. We can up late.
- **a** go **b** get **c** go to

C Choose the correct words to complete the profile.

My weekend

At the weekend, I usually 1**go** / **get** up early on Saturday and 2**go** / **get** shopping at the market. I go early because it's busy later. After that, I 3**take** / **meet** friends for lunch. In



the afternoon, I like to ⁴**spend** / **do** time with my boyfriend. We go to the park, or go to the cinema. We do something together because I ⁵**make** / **spend** a lot of time at work. I try not to ⁶**check** / **spend** emails on my phone at the weekends! On Sunday, I get ⁷**on** / **up** late and have lunch with my family. Sometimes I ⁸**go** / **get** running in the afternoon. Then I relax in the evening.

GRAMMAR

adverbs and phrases of frequency

2A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 I meet my sister for lunch every Tuesdays.
 - **a** always Tuesday **b** every Tuesday
 - **c** every a Tuesday
- 2 Jack <u>doesn't work usually</u> at the weekend.
- a don't work usuallyb usually don't workc doesn't usually work
- **3** <u>I always am</u> tired at the end of the day.
 - **a** Am I always **b** I am always **c** Always I am
- 4 He plays football twice in week.
 - **a** twice weeks **b** twice week **c** twice a week
- **B** Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
 - 1 | often / never get up early. | love to sleep!
 - 2 Often we / We often meet for lunch at a café.
 - 3 I go shopping with my mum every weekend / weekends.
 - 4 I check my emails three or four time / times a day.
 - 5 | never am / am never late for school.
 - 6 How / When often do you go on holiday?
 - 7 | sometimes / always finish work late, every day!
 - 8 Jamie hardly ever reads / doesn't read books.
- C Put the words in brackets in the correct order to make sentences.

1 (quiet / It's / never) in the mornings in our house. There's lots to do before work and school. ² (up / My / late / often / gets / son), so he doesn't have time to have breakfast. I make it for him every day, but ³ ever (ever / it / he / eats / hardly). I eat cereal and have a coffee in the kitchen, but ⁴ (usually / news / to / my / the / listens / wife) in the bedroom while she gets ready. ⁵ (listens / music / daughter / often / My / to) in her bedroom, too. Then the dog wakes up and runs around the house. It's crazy! However, 6 (never / work / I'm /late/for)!

PRONUNCIATION

3A 2.04 | linking | Listen and complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- 1 We have Spanish classes twice a
- 2 I go to a party once a
- 3 I check my messages once a _____!
- 4 We meet for lunch every _____.
- **5** We only go on holiday once a
- 6 I check my emails once an _____
- B 2.04 | Listen again and repeat. Practise the linking between words.

READING

4 A Complete the quiz with the words in the box.

always ever every often on sometimes twice weekend

B Answer the questions for you. Then read the key and check your answers.

Key

Mostly a: You like being with other people. You have a lot of friends and you're happy when you spend time with them. It's important to be alone sometimes, too.

Mostly b: You like to be with other people and you have a good group of friends. But sometimes you like to do things alone and have a quiet time. Both are important to you and that's a healthy way to spend your time.

Mostly c: You like being alone most of the time. You hardly ever spend time with other people and you don't feel bored when you're alone. That's fine, but it's good to be with your friends and family, too. Try to meet a friend for coffee or lunch sometimes.

C Read the descriptions. Match the person (1–3) with the section of the key (a–c) in Ex 4B.

- 1 Sofia is a writer and spends a lot of time online. She has 1,000 friends on social media, but doesn't know all of them. She thinks short work meetings are useful. She plays tennis twice a week with her friend. At the weekend she usually meets another friend for dinner. She hardly ever goes to parties.
- 2 Samuel is a doctor. He works hard in the week and often leaves the hospital at 8 p.m. He gets up early and goes running every day before work. At the weekend he spends time online and sometimes meets a friend or his family for lunch. He likes to read interesting articles and the news.
- **3** Adesh is a digital designer. He likes long meetings and talks a lot about work with other people. He always gets up late at the weekend because he spends time with his friends on Friday and Saturday nights. They like parties! On Sunday afternoons he plays football in a local team.

QUIZ Alone OR together?

Some people like to do things with other people. Some people like to do things alone. Do our quiz and learn about yourself.

1 How often do you meet friends for coffee?

- a I meet a group of friends for coffee
- **b** Once a week or less. I meet a friend and we talk about our lives.

2 What type of exercise do you like?

- a Team sports. I meet friends and play sport once a week.
- **b** I usually go running with a friend at the ³
- c I go running alone, never with other people.

3 How do you spend time online?

- a 1⁴ use social media and talk online with my friends.
- **b** I use social media and I sometimes watch videos.
- c I read websites about things I like.

4 How ⁵ do you go to parties?

- a 6_____ weekend. My friends always have parties!
- **b** Rarely. Maybe five or six times a year.
- **c** Never. I don't like parties.

5 Do you get up late at the weekend?

- a Yes, always. And I come home late ⁷...... Fridays and Saturdays!
- **b** Usually, but sometimes I get up early.
- **c** No. I always get up early at the weekend. I like the quiet mornings.

6 Do you like meetings?

- **a** Yes, it's good to talk to people I work with.
- **b** ⁸_____, but only if they're short.
- c I hate them. I like to work alone.

Lesson 2C

HOW TO ... | order a meal in a restaurant VOCABULARY | restaurant words PRONUNCIATION | polite intonation

VOCABULARY

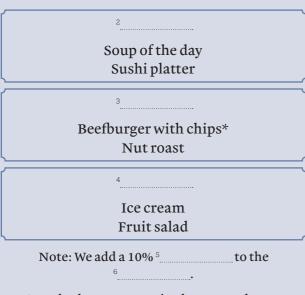
restaurant words

- **1** A Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 - 1 I don't want a **starter** / **main course** / **dessert**. I'm not hungry after that meal!
 - 2 Can you ask the **waiter** / **bill** / **service charge** for some more water?
 - **3** Let's have a **starter** / **main course** / **dessert**. I'd like the soup.
 - 4 Give me the starter / side dish / bill. I can pay.
 - 5 Let's have a nice waiter / service charge / dinner for two at that new Italian restaurant.
 - 6 Wow, that's expensive. Is a service charge / bill / waiter included?

B Complete the menu with the words in the box.

bill	desserts	dinner for	two	main courses	
serv	ice charge	starters	waite	er	

SET MENU: 1



*We also have a vegetarian burger – ask your 7______about this.

How to ...

order a meal in a restaurant

2A 2.05 | Listen to two people in a restaurant. Does the man (M) or the woman (W) order food (1-4)?

1	fish		3	olives	
2	lamb	<u>.</u>	4	soup	

B 2.05 | Listen again. Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- 1 Good evening. Do you have a _____?
- **2** Yes, we have a table _____ two for 8 p.m.
- 3 Can we have a _____ near the window?
- 4 _____you ready to order?
- **5** _____ the starter, I'd like the olives, please.
- 6 And I'd _____ the lamb for the main course.
- 7 Would you like something drink?
- 8 How is your ____?

PRONUNCIATION

- **3**A **2.06** | **polite intonation** | Listen to the requests. Do the requests sound polite (P) or not polite (NP)?
 - 1 Can we have some water, please?
 - 2 Could I have a salad, please?
 - 3 Can I have some chips?
 - 4 Could we have a table near the window?
 - 5 Can I have the soup, please?
 - 6 Could we have the bill at the same time?
 - B 🚺 2.07 | Listen and repeat the polite requests.

SPEAKING

4 A Complete the conversation with the responses (a–e).

 Waiter:
 Good evening, do you have a reservation?

 Customer:
 1

 Waiter:
 Are you ready to order?

 Customer:
 2

Waiter: Yes, of course. And for the main course?

Customer: ³

Waiter: Would you like something to drink?

Customer: 4

Waiter: Yes, certainly.

Waiter: Would you like to look at the dessert menu?

Customer: 5

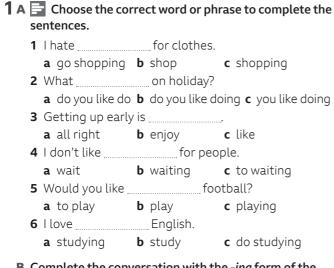
Waiter: Yes, of course.

- **a** Yes. For a starter, can I have the salad, please?
- **b** No thanks. Could we have the bill, please?
- **c** Yes, we have a table for two for half past six.
- **d** I'd like the chicken, please.
- e Could I have some sparkling water, please?
- B **2.08** | Listen and check.
- C 2.09 | You are the customer in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.
- **D** Listen to the recording and compare it to the model in Ex 4B.

Lesson 2D

GRAMMAR

like, hate, love + -ing



B Complete the conversation with the *-ing* form of the words in the box.

do get up meet shop spend study swim walk

- A: What do you like ¹ ______ at the weekend?
 B: Well, I don't like ² ______ early! I usually do some exercise. I enjoy ³ ______ and I usually go on Sunday, with my family. What about you?
 A: I love ⁴ ______ time with my friends. We like
- ⁵______for coffee or for lunch on Saturday. I hate ⁶______at the weekend, but I have a big exam soon at university, so I sometimes do that. I also like ⁷______for clothes at the big centre in town. Do you like that?
- B: No, I hate ⁸_____ around the town centre!

READING

2 A Read the article and answer the questions.

- 1 Where is the race?
- **2** What do people who finish it get?
- **B** Read the article again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?
 - **1** The race happens in the summer.
 - **2** The race is the same as 11 marathons.
 - **3** The race is only in one part of the city.
 - **4** People in the competition run for six hours a day.
 - **5** Anybody can run in the competition.
 - **6** The runners eat a lot of food.
 - 7 It isn't cold at that time of year.
 - **8** All runners who finish the race get a T-shirt.

The 5,000 km race



Some people enjoy running, but these people love it. This 5,000 km race happens every year from June to August. 5,000 km is the same distance as from the East to the West of the USA, plus eleven marathons (a marathon is 42.2 km). But runners in this race run around a single city block (925 metres) in Queens, New York, over and over again!

The race lasts 52 days, and people run from 6 a.m. until midnight, every day. Most people in the competition run about 100 km a day. They only have six hours to wash and sleep each day. They need to visit the doctor before they enter, to check they are strong and healthy.

People give the runners vegetarian food to eat while they run. They need to eat all the time because they use a lot of energy when they do the race.

It's very hot in New York at this time of year and sometimes there is a lot of rain, too. Runners often carry umbrellas while they run!

Not everyone finishes the race, but runners receive a T-shirt if they do. It's not much, but people don't do it for the prize. They do it because it makes them feel good.



1–2 REVIEW

GRAMMAR

1 A Put the words in the correct order to make sentences and questions.

- **1** you / Where / live / do ?
- 2 James and / Agatha / Are / friends ?
- **3** understand / don't / I / German .
- 4 your / Do / city / you / like ?
- 5 speak / Do / parents / English / your ?
- ${\bf 6}\,$ from / They / Canada / don't / come .
- 7 live / Who / with / do / you ?
- 8 children / your / What time / up / get / do ?

B Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 | work / works from home.
- **2** Do / Does your parents live near you?
- 3 Nikki doesn't **like / likes** fish.
- 4 When do you / you do your homework?
- 5 Jack and Lisa don't / doesn't have a lot of money.
- 6 What do / does 'politician' mean?
- 7 We play / plays tennis on Saturdays.
- 8 Where are / do you from?

2 Add the missing apostrophes to the words in bold.

- 1 Andrea is my **mothers** sister.
- 2 My cousins (Jack and Annie) house is near here.
- 3 Simons a nice man.
- **4** That's the **childrens** bedroom.
- 5 That's my parents car.
- 6 Georgias at home at the moment.
- 7 The films end was very exciting.
- 8 The teacher checked all the **students** homework.

3 A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

1 I usually have <u>a pasta</u> for lunch.

- **a** pastas **b** some pasta **c** an pasta
- 2 We don't have <u>some apples</u>.
- a any apples b some apple c an apples3 Can I have <u>any coffee</u>, please?
- a some coffee b any coffees c an coffee4 Do you like <u>pear</u>?
- **a** a pear **b** some pear **c** pears

B Complete the text with one word in each gap.

There's a lot of food and drink in my fridge at the moment. I've got 1_____ lot of eggs – twenty, I think! I also like fruit, so I've got 2_____ apple, 3_____ melon and 4_____ strawberries.

I've also got ⁵_____ lemonade. I haven't got ⁶_____ meat because I don't eat it, but we've got ⁷_____ cheese. I live with my friend and he loves it. We don't like yoghurt, so we haven't got ⁸_____ of that.

4 Put the words in brackets in the correct place in the sentences.

1	I get up late at the weekend.	(always)
2	Susan works at the weekend.	(never)
3	I meet my mum for lunch Sunday.	(every)
4	Mark is late for school.	(hardly ever)
5	I play tennis with my friend Tuesdays.	(on)
6	How do you listen to the news?	(often)
7	My parents go on holiday twice year.	(a)
8	I'm very tired in the evening.	(always)

5A Complete the sentences with the *-ing* forms of the verbs in the box.

do get play run take write

- 1 I love ______a break from work.
- **2** My sister loves _____ in the park. She goes every day.
- 3 Do you like _____tennis?
- **4** I enjoy ______ short stories on my blog.
- 5 What do you like ______at the weekend?
- 6 I don't like _____ up early in the morning!

B Find and correct six mistakes with verb + *-ing* in the email.

< Inbox

Hi Dae-Jung,

We need to plan the company activity day on 23 March. What does everyone like do? I know that Yana hates go to parties and Marcus doesn't like do sport. I enjoy play games outside, but the weather isn't always good at that time of year.

Maybe we could do something inside? James loves cook, so how about a cooking lesson for the team? I think cook is all right, and Aisha likes it, too. Can you ask the rest of the team? I want us to do something that everyone can enjoy.

Thanks,

Holly



VOCABULARY

6 A Complete the jobs with the missing letters.

- 1 wr_____
- **2** nu
- **3** sc.
- **4** do
- **5** ac_____
- 6 en
- 7 po______of____
- **8** la

B Match (1–7) to (a–g) to make sentences.

- 1 My uncle is a taxi
- 2 I want to be a hotel
- **3** My sister is a university
- 4 My son wants to be a famous football
- **5** Many people in my village are farm
- 6 Our team's new football
- 7 My mother teaches
- **a** student and studies law.
- **b** manager is from Spain.
- c driver. He works at night.
- **d** player when he finishes school.
- **e** workers in the summer.
- **f** manager in a nice, hot country!
- g Italian at a university.

7 Complete the text with the verbs in the box.

check get up go (x2) have play spend work I'm a nurse and I $^{\rm 1}$ _____ in a hospital at night. I ²_____ late in the afternoon, then I go to work. First, I ³_____ my emails, then I start work. After work I⁴______shopping. I like shopping at night because it's very quiet. When I get home, I'm tired. 1⁵ to bed very late. At the weekend, 1 ⁶_____ time with my family or ⁷_____ in a band. I don't⁸ a lot of money, but I love my job.

8 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm _____. Do you want to have dinner?
- **a** hungry **b** tired **c** angry
- **2** I'm _____. I feel OK today.
 - **a** bored **b** ill **c** all right
- 3 I'm sorry about yesterday. Are you _____ with me?
- **a** thirsty **b** angry **c** relaxed 4 We haven't got any water and I'm
- **a** thirsty **b** relaxed **c** hungry
- 5 I'm _____. Do you want to go to the cinema?
- **a** hungry **b** bored c ill
- 6 I'm _____ and I need to sleep now. Goodnight. **a** tired **b** all right **c** hungry

9 A Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.

Comple	te the conversation with one word in each gap.
Waiter:	Here is the menu.
Sam:	Thank you very much!
Bea:	OK. Let's see what food they have
Sam:	Mmm, this looks good. Do you want a 1?
Bea:	Yes please, I'd like the deep-fried mushrooms.
Sam:	Sounds good. Me, too.
Bea:	What do you want for a ² course?
Sam:	A burger, with a green salad as a ³ dish. And you?
Bea:	The chicken. Do you want a 4? Maybe an ice cream?
Sam:	I'm not sure. Can we decide after the main course?
Bea:	OK, good idea. Let's order then. Now, where's the ⁵ ?
(One hc	pur later)
Sam:	What a nice meal.
Bea:	Yes, lovely. Excuse me, can we have the ⁶ , please?
Waiter:	Yes, of course.

B Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

chicken fish lemonade melon oil potatoes

- 1 I like , but I don't like other types of meat.
- 2 I want something to drink. Have we got any ____?
- 3 I don't like _____ or prawns. I don't like anything from the sea.

.

- **4** My favourite fruit is
- 5 Let's make chips with these
- **6** This ______ is made from olives.

C Complete the list with the words in the box.

	ppers praw	mushrooms Ig water	
fruit:		 	
vegetables:		 	
vegetables: meat or fish		 	

drinks:

other:

Lesson 3A

GRAMMAR | this, that, these, those; here, there VOCABULARY | rooms and furniture PRONUNCIATION | /I/ and /i:/

VOCABULARY

rooms and furniture

- A Sector Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 1 The ______ has a cooker, fridge and
 - washing machine.
 - a bathroom **b** kitchen **c** living room
 - 2 In the bathroom, there's a very nicea showerb deskc fridge
 - 3 I do my homework at my ______ in my bedroom.
 a lamp b mirror c desk
 - 4 Please put the milk in the ______after you use it.
 - a oven b fridge c wardrobe
 - **5** Cook the cake in the _____ for 35 minutes.
 - a shelf **b** washbasin **c** oven
 - **6** My Dad always sits in that _____.
 - **a** armchair **b** carpet **c** stairs
 - **B** Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

counter cupboard fridge light plant rug shelf shower sofa washbasin

- 1 Just put your cup on the kitchen
- 2 Your book is on that
- **3** There's cold water in the _____ if you would like some.
- **4** That _____ looks dry. It needs some water.
- 5 It's dark in here. Can you turn the _____ on?
- 6 Is that the time? I need to have a _____ and go to work!
- 7 The beans and rice are in the _____ next to the sink.
- 8 Come and sit on the _____ with me and watch TV.

C Complete the words with the missing letters. The first letter is given.

This is our house. We always leave our shoes in the ¹h______when we come in. We have a big living room with two ²s_____and an ³a______to relax in front of the TV. The kitchen has a lot of ⁴c______to keep food in, and we cook with a small ⁵o_____. Upstairs we have three ⁶b_____and a bathroom with a really good ⁷s_____. We also have a ⁸h_____o where I sometimes work.



GRAMMAR

this, that, these, those; here, there

2A Complete the sentences with *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, *here* or *there*.

- 1 Come and sit _____, next to me.
- 2 _____ key here is for the back door.
- **3** Can you pass me _____ towels over there, please?
- 4 How much is the chair over _____, by the window?
- 5 Put the book on ______ shelf over there, please.
- 6 _____ prawns are delicious, thank you!
- 7 Your phone is _____, on my desk. Do you want me to give it to you?
- 8 Who are _____ people over there?
- B S Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 - 1 Are _____ your keys, over there on the counter?
 - **a** these **b** those **c** that
 - **2** Do you like _____ plant? I bought it at the supermarket.
 - **a** this **b** these **c** those
 - **3** Let's sit on _____ chairs here, next to the table.
 - a these **b** this **c** those
 - **4** Can you bring those bottles over _____, to me please?
 - **a** there **b** that **c** here
 - **5** _____ cheese in the fridge smells bad.
 - a Those b That c These
 - 6 A: Where's the TV remote?B: It's over _____, on that shelf near the window.
 - **a** here **b** that **c** there

C Correct the underlined mistakes in the conversation.

- A: Thanks again for helping me while I'm not ¹<u>there</u> at home.
- B: No problem.
- A: OK, so this key is for the front door, and ²<u>this</u> key on the table over there is for the back door. The wi-fi password is there, on ³<u>those</u> piece of paper.
- B: OK, thanks.
- A: Can you water the plants, too?
- B: Of course. How often?
- A: ⁴<u>This</u> plants here by the window need water every day. But ⁵<u>that</u> ones over there only need water once a week. Oh, one more thing, you can use my bike if you want.
- B: Great! Where is it?
- A: It's in the garage over ⁶<u>here</u>, next to the big tree in the garden.

PRONUNCIATION

3 A 3.01 | /I/ and /i:/ | Listen and underline the words with a long /i:/ sound

- 1 This oven is easy to use.
- 2 Are these your mirrors?
- **3** These cups in the sink are dirty.
- **4** We like this sofa.
- **5** Your keys are on this shelf.
- 6 Can I eat these eggs in the fridge?
- B 3.01 | Listen again and repeat. Practise saying the long /i:/ sound and the short /I/ sounds in each sentence.

LISTENING

- 4A 3.02 | Listen to Hayley showing her friend Fabien her new house. Number the rooms in the order you hear about them.
 - bathroom
 - bedroom
 - dining room
 - hall
 - kitchen
 - living room

B 3.02 | Listen again. Are the sentences True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Fabien never loses his keys.
- 2 Hayley has a new sofa and armchairs.
- **3** Fabien doesn't like what's on the wall in the living room.
- **4** Hayley wants to put a table and chairs in the dining room.
- 5 Hayley's kitchen is small.
- 6 Hayley doesn't like cooking.
- **7** They both like the shower.
- 8 Hayley's bedroom is clean.

C 📑 💿 3.03 | Listen to the recording. Write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.

- 1
- 2
- з



WRITING

write a description of a home for a website; use commas

5A Read the message. How many rooms does the apartment have?



We hope you enjoy your stay in our apartment. It's in a great area, which has lots of shops and parks. There are museums and a market in the town centre, too.

The apartment has a large hall when you come in. The living room has a sofa, two armchairs, a small table and a big TV. It has good wi-fi, so it's a great area to relax in.

We also have a dining room with a table and six chairs. The kitchen has a big fridge, an oven, a washing machine and a dishwasher. It's perfect if you like cooking.

B Add commas to the sentences if necessary.

- 1 We have three bedrooms <u>two</u> bathrooms and a home office upstairs.
- **2** The bedroom has a large bed <u>and a desk</u>.
- **3** In the living room we have a sofa <u>two</u> armchairs <u>and a big TV.</u>
- 4 Your keys and sunglasses are on the counter.

6A Look at the photo. Imagine this is your house. Make notes on these things.

- What rooms does it have?
- What furniture is in each room?
- What's your favourite room? Why?
- What things are in the local area?

B Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 stay / modern / Enjoy / house / this / in / your .
- 2 a / city / the / It's / short / perfect / break / for / in .
- 3 view / park / There's / a / beautiful / the / over .
- 4 well-equipped / and / The / large / kitchen / is .
- 5 by / close / shops / are / The .
- 6 area / in / great / a / It's / to / relax .
- C Write a description of the house in Ex 6A for a travel review website. Use the phrases in Ex 6B to help you. Write 80–100 words.



Lesson 3B

VOCABULARY

common adjectives (1)

1 A 📑 Write a word to fill the gaps.

adjective	opposite
quiet	loud
1	the same
small	2
easy	3
4	short
5	soft

B Put the letters in brackets in order to make adjectives.

At the Grand Hotel, your stay is ¹______ (fedeftirn) from other hotels. Your room is ²______ (relga) so it's ³_____ (saye) to relax. The windows make the room very ⁴______ (tique), even though the noise from the street outside is loud. And the bathroom towels are very ⁵______ (tofs). Whether you stay with us for a ⁶______ (trosh) or a ⁷______ (goln) time, we want you to be happy.



C Complete the sentences with adjectives from Ex 1A.

- 1 I love this _____ armchair. It's really comfortable.
- 2 This exercise is _____, I don't think I can do it.
- **3** Shh, be _____! I can't hear the radio.
- **4** This book is very _____. There's no space for it in my bag.
- **5** Those cars look the _____, but they're actually _____.
- 6 It's a big house and it takes a _____ time to clean all the rooms.
- 7 I like our house, but the noise from the street is very _____.
- 8 It's _____ to cook pasta. All you need is hot water and salt.

GRAMMAR

have got

2 A 📑 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- **1** My sister <u>haven't</u> got any social media accounts.
- **a** have **b** 've **c** hasn't
- 2 You have got a large house?
 a Have got b Have you got c Got you have
 3 Yes, we got.
 - **a** we do **b** we have **c** we've
- **4** They <u>has</u> got a new coffee machine.
- **a** have **b** hasn't **c** having
- **B** Complete the sentences with the correct form of *have got*. Use contractions where possible.
 - **1** They ______ a new car. It looks really nice.
 - 2 Octavio ______a laptop, but he'd like one.
 - 3 My brother _____ my keys and I need them!
 - 4 Why _____ a plant in your bag?5 A: _____ Kenji got any children?
 - B: No, he _____.
 - 6 Tanya ______ a large house with five bedrooms.
 - 7 We _____ any coffee. Can you buy some?
 - 8 A: _____ you got a new laptop? B: Yes, I _____ Do you like it?

C Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

C	Put the words in brackets in the correct order.		
	Jo:	What can we get Ben for his birthday? 1 (everything / got / he / has)	
		he needs!	
	Martin:	I know, but ²	
	Jo:	So let's think of a cheap present. ³ (a / has / lamp / got / he) for his home office?	
	Martin:	4 (has / yes, / he).	
	Jo:	I know! Let's have a party for him!	
	Martin:	Great idea! ⁵ (party / have / those / you / lights / got) from last year?	
	Jo:	6 (have / yes, / I)!	

Martin: Brilliant! We can put them in my garden.

PRONUNCIATION

3 A 3.04 | sentence stress | Listen and underline the stressed words.

- 1 Have you got any plants?
- 2 She hasn't got much money.
- 3 We've got a lot of milk.
- 4 Have they got a TV?
- 5 I've got two phones.
- 6 Has he got a fridge?

B 🚺 3.04 | Listen again and repeat.

READING

4A Read the title and introduction to the article. Choose the best summary.

- 1 what furniture to buy
- 2 how much money to spend on furniture
- 3 the best places for your furniture

B Complete the article with the paragraph titles (a-e).

- **a** How do you 'travel' around the house?
- **b** What do you want to see?
- c Keep furniture away from the walls.
- **d** Colour can change a room.
- e Try new things.

Five ways to create a perfect living space

C Read the article again. Match the questions (1–6) with the answers (a–f).

- 1 What's the first thing to think about in a room?
- **2** Why is it good to be near a window when you work at home?
- **3** Why do people often need to walk through a living room?
- **4** Why is space important in a bedroom?
- 5 What colour should you paint a small room?
- 6 Why should you sometimes change things in a room?
- **a** It can help you get up in the morning.
- **b** To get to the kitchen.
- c White, because it makes the room feel big.
- d What you can see.
- e To find the right places for your furniture and other objects.
- **f** It helps you take a break and relax.

From small rooms to large rooms, where you put your furniture makes a big difference. Read our advice and learn how to make your home a great space to live in.

1

Before you choose where to put things, decide what you want to look at. For example, in the living room this could be the TV. In your home office, it's nice to be near a window so you can look out when you don't want to have a break from work.

2

Space is important. If you leave a little space between a sofa or a desk and the wall, the room will feel large and relaxed.

3

Is it easy to move in the rooms? People usually need to walk through a living room to get to the kitchen, for example. In the bedroom, make space around the bed for you to get in and out in the morning or late at night.

.....

4

Light changes a room a lot. The colour white makes a room feel big, but can be a bit boring and make everything look the same. Dark colours can make a room feel small, so soft colours like blue and green are a good idea.

5

Change things around sometimes. Move a plant, or put a table close to a window. Remember that no space is the same, so you can only find the perfect position for furniture if you try lots of different places.



Lesson 3C

HOW TO ... | make invitations and offers VOCABULARY | social phrases PRONUNCIATION | rhythm in phrases

VOCABULARY

social phrases

1 A Sector Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm late.
- a Great **b** Sorry **c** Thank
- 2 Have a journey home.
- a full **b** near **c** safe
- **3** These are you.
- a for **b** to **c** from
- **4** Thank you for the ______evening!
- a lovely b safe c delicious
- 5 I'm_____. That was delicious!
- **a** safe **b** lovely **c** full
- 6 you liked it!
 - **a** Safe **b** Glad **c** Thank

B Put the words in brackets in the correct order to complete the conversations.

- **1** A: These flowers are for you.
- B: Thank you._____ (kind / you / how / of) !
- 2 A:
 - A: _____(I'm / late / sorry). B: No problem.
- **3** A: _____ (you / see / to / great). B: You, too.
- 4 A: I'm full. That was delicious!
- B: _____(you / it / glad / liked)!
- **5** A: Have a safe journey home. B:

(you / thank / evening / the / for / lovely)!

PRONUNCIATION

2 A 3.05 | rhythm in phrases | Listen and match the phrases (1-6) with the stress patterns (a-f).

- 1 Sorry I'm late.
- 2 Great to see you.
- 3 Oh, thank you. How nice of you!
- 4 No problem.
- **5** Have a safe journey home.
- 6 Thank you for the lovely evening!
- a
- b 0000
- c
- d 0000000
- e ••••
- f 🕶•
- B 🚺 3.05 | Listen again and repeat.

How to ...

make invitations and offers

3 A **3.06** | Listen to the conversation and number the events (a-d) in the order they happen.

- **a** Evan says it's a nice evening.
- **b** They finish dinner.
- c Bella makes an invitation.
- d James talks about drinks.

B 🚺 3.06 | Listen again. Choose the correct options.

- 1 Bella invites Evan for dinner at 7 o'clock / 7.30 / 8 o'clock.
- 2 Evan doesn't eat meat / fish / prawns.
- 3 James is Bella's husband / Bella's friend / Evan's friend.
- 4 First, dinner is ready / Evan arrives / Evan meets James.
- 5 Evan wants to drink still water / sparkling water / lemonade.
- 6 Evan takes a bus / takes a taxi / walks home.
- C 📑 🚺 3.07 | Listen to the recording. Write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.
- 1 _____ 2 _____ 3

SPEAKING

- **4** A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.
 - drink get let nice see take
 - B: Hi! Great to ¹_____you.
 - A: You too. These are for you.
 - B: Thank you. How ²_____ of you! Let me ³_____ your coat.
 - A: Thank you.
 - B: Can I⁴ you something to ⁵ ?
 - A: Yes please. Can I have some water?
 - B: Of course. ⁶ me get your drink.
 - B **3.08** Listen and check.
 - C **3.09** You are student B in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.
 - **D** Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 4B.

Lesson 3D

GRAMMAR

there is, there are

1 A Choose the correct words to complete the tourist advert.

Welcome to the village of Little Harding, the perfect place to visit with your family or a quiet day out with friends. There aren't '**some / any** cinemas or theatres here, but there are '**a / lots** of other things to do. There are a '**lot / lots** of open spaces for you to enjoy nature, and '**there are / there's** a big forest to walk in. There isn't '**much / many** traffic, even in the summer, and there '**is / isn't** hardly any noise, so you can relax. And don't worry if you forget to bring food, because there's '**some / a** small café which sells meals and '**lots / lot** of our famous ice cream!

B 🚺 3.10 | Listen and check.

C Match (1-8) to (a-h) to make sentences.

- 1 There's a
- 2 Are there
- 3 There aren't
- 4 Is there
- 5 There isn't
- 6 Is there much
- 7 There aren't many
- 8 Are there any
- **a** many eggs in the fridge.
- **b** lot of traffic in this area in the morning.
- **c** people here.
- **d** apples in the kitchen?
- e any good cafés near here?
- **f** a cinema in our town.
- **g** a bus station in the city centre?
- **h** noise round here at night?

D The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 There <u>are</u> a lot of traffic in the town centre.
- **a** is **b** aren't **c** not
- 2 There are any shops near here?
 - **a** Is there any **b** There is any **c** Are there any
- **3** There <u>are no</u> noise in this area.
 - **a** 's no **b** are not **c** 's any
- **4** A: Is there a supermarket near here?
 - B: No, there <u>aren't</u>.
 - a not **b** isn't **c** is

LISTENING

2A 3.11 | Listen to two people looking around a new flat. Are the sentences True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 The flat has three bedrooms.
- 2 The oven and fridge are new.
- **3** There aren't any shops near the flat.
- 4 You can walk to a big supermarket.
- 5 James hasn't got a car.
- 6 There's a school in King Street.
- 7 The street is quiet at weekends.
- 8 There's a small restaurant nearby.
- B **3.11** | Listen again. Choose the things in the box they talk about.

cafés cinemas forest neighbours noise park restaurants shops station supermarket traffic

C **3.11** | Listen again. Which flat are the people looking at? Choose the correct photo.





Lesson 4A

GRAMMAR | past simple of *be: was, were* VOCABULARY | time phrases (1) and dates PRONUNCIATION | weak and strong sounds: *was, were*

VOCABULARY

time phrases (1) and dates

- 1 A Solution Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 - 1 We were in Brussels _____ morning.
 - a last b yesterday c ago
 - 2 Our last class was _____ May 3rd.
 - **a** at **b** on **c** in
 - 3 She was here ten minutesa agob yesterdayc last
 - 4 this exercise, check your answers.
 - a After b On c Last
 - 5 I was at home night.
 - **a** on **b** in **c** last
 - 6 We always go on holiday the summer. **a** on **b** last **c** in
 - B 4.01 | Complete the conversation with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

after ago in last on yesterday

A: Hi, Ania. Where were you ¹ _____ night?

- B: Oh, ²______ afternoon was busy at work. And two days ³______ I was in Paris. So I was really tired.
- A: No problem. But let's meet soon. We need to do something for your birthday! How about 4 tomorrow's class?
- B: I can't, sorry. What about Saturday, ⁵ _____ the afternoon?
- A: OK. Maybe we can have birthday cake at Mason's?
- B: Good idea! I love that restaurant. But my birthday was a week ⁶, ...
- A: Oh, really? Sorry! So it was ⁷ Wednesday?
- B: Yes. That's why I was in Paris⁸ weekend.

C Put the letters in brackets in the correct order to make time phrases and dates.

Do you need any help with your presentation on Monday?

Monday? I thought it was on the ¹ (deosnc) of ² (sugAut)?

No, it's 31 ³ (luJy). That's Monday. But I can help you with it tonight.

Thanks – it's my ⁴_____

Have you got the information you need?

No, I've only got the information for ⁵ (raJuany) to ⁶ (liprA).

(strif) presentation.

GRAMMAR

past simple of be: was, were

2 A 📑 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Tamara and John <u>aren't</u> at work yesterday.
- **a** was **b** wasn't **c** weren't
- 2 Alice is at home last night.a was b were c weren't
- 3 Was you on holiday last month?
 - a Were b Wasn't c Weren't
- 4 We <u>weren't</u> at our friend's house last weekend. It was great.
 - **a** was **b** were **c** wasn't
- **B** Complete the sentences and questions with one word in each gap.
 - 1 Where _____you yesterday?
 - 2 James very happy as a child.
 - **3** When _____ the first World Cup?
 - **4** Mark and Sylvie ______ on holiday last week. It was really nice for them.
 - 5 A: _______you in class yesterday?

 B: No, I _______. I _____at work.
 - 6 When _____ Mark Zuckerberg born?
 - 7 My parents _____ born in Germany. They _____ born in Poland.
 - 8 Sandrine _____ at home last night. She _____ at the cinema.
 - 9 Where _____ the first Olympics?
 - **10** The 2016 Olympics ______ in London. They _____ in Rio de Janeiro.

C Choose the correct words to complete the fact file.

 $\leftarrow \rightarrow c$

...

Surprising facts: HISTORY

- The first photographic cameras ¹was / were around in the 18th century, and they ²was / were very slow. Sometimes it ³was / were thirty minutes to take a photo!
- The Olympic games are only sports these days, but they ⁴were / weren't always like that. From 1912 to 1948, there ⁵was / were prizes for art, too.
- Most people think Cleopatra was Egyptian, but she ⁶wasn't / weren't. She ⁷was / were born in Egypt, but her family ⁸were / weren't Greek.
- Many people think the Model T Ford ⁹was / were the first car, but it wasn't. It ¹⁰was / were Carl Benz's design from 1879.

PRONUNCIATION

- **3**A **4.02** | weak and strong sounds: was, were | Listen to the statements and questions. Are the words in bold strong (S) or weak (W) forms?
 - 1 She wasn't born in 2000.
 - 2 Were they at home last night?
 - 3 Yes, they were.
 - 4 Where were you in 2020?
 - 5 No, he wasn't. He was with Andy.
 - 6 We were very happy with our hotel.
 - B 🚺 4.02 | Listen again and repeat.

LISTENING

4A **4.03** | Listen to two people discussing an article. What decade(s) is/are the article about?

- 1 the 2000s 2 the 2010s
- 3 the 2000s and the 2010s
- B 🜗 4.03 | Listen again and match the events (1–6) with the years in the box.

2000 2004 2008 2011 2012 2014

- 1 Obama wins the US election
- 2 the start of Facebook
- **3** seven billion people in the world
- 4 Malala Yousafzai wins the Nobel Peace Prize
- 5 the first camera phones in the shops
- 6 a robot takes a selfie on Mars
- C 4.03 | Complete the extracts with was or were. Then listen again and check.
 - 1 Can you remember when it ?
 - 2006, I think. 2 That
 - . It back in 2004! 3 No. it
 - seven billion of something 4 There in 2011. ?
 - 5 Do you know what they
 - 6 I think they around in 2005.
 - 7 There an important selfie in the news in 2012.
 - 8 It from Mars. It а NASA robot!



WRITING

write about a special time; use time phrases

- **5A** Read the online post. Choose the correct option to complete the title.
 - 1 driving test
 - 2 driving lesson
 - 3 car

My first

I remember it well. It was eight years ago, in the summer. I was in my final year at school. I was in the car outside my house with the teacher, and I remember my parents were at the window in the house. I was very happy at the time because my dream was to drive a car. The lesson was great! An hour later I was home again. My teacher was very nice, because it wasn't easy to drive for the first time. In the evening I was tired, but also happy.



B Read the post again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 The driving lesson was in the summer.
- 2 The writer was in the car.
- **3** The writer's parents were in the car.
- 4 The lesson was thirty minutes.
- 5 The writer was happy.
- 6 The writer didn't like the teacher.
- 7 It was difficult to drive for the first time.
- 8 The writer was tired the next morning.

C Find and underline four time phrases in the online post.

6A Choose one of these 'firsts' to write about.

- first day at school
- first driving lesson
- first flat/house
- first holiday

B Make notes to answer these questions.

- 1 When was it?
- 2 Where was it?
- 3 Who was there?
- 4 Were you happy?
- 5 What was one good or bad thing about it?
- C Write your online post in 80-100 words. Use time phrases in your post.

Lesson 4B

GRAMMAR | how much, how many; how + adjective VOCABULARY | amounts; numbers PRONUNCIATION | intonation to check understanding

VOCABULARY

amounts; numbers

1 A Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

about	exactly	just	nearly	over	under	
-------	---------	------	--------	------	-------	--

- **1** 49 is _____ under fifty.
- **2** 998–1002 is ______a thousand.
- **3** 98 is _____a hundred.
- 4 300 is _____ three hundred.
- **5** 712 is ______ seven hundred.
- 6 99 is just _____a hundred.

B Choose the correct answer to complete the sentences.

- In 2018, three ______ five seven two billion viewers watched the FIFA World Cup.
- **a** and **b** point **c** a
- 2 An average blue whale weighs about eighteen ______thousand kilograms.
- **a** and **b** ca
- 3 What was life like _____ hundred years ago?
- a– band ca
- **4** In 2021, the population of Australia was twenty-five eight million.
- a **b** point **c** and
- **5** Over seventy-five and _____half million people visit Paris every year.
- **a b**a cpoint
- 6 The average person walks round the Earth four five times in their life.

c point

aa b-

C 🜗 4.04 | Listen and check.

D Choose the correct answers to complete the story.

Last year I was in America on a long holiday. We went across the whole country in a car, on a long road called Route 66. It's three thousand, '- / **and** nine hundred '- / **and** forty kilometres! My favourite day was a big barbecue festival in Kentucky with over '- / **a** thousand people. There was a lot of food there: two '- / **point** five thousand hamburgers and two hundred ⁵- / **and** twenty kilos of meat! After an hour, I wasn't hungry. About ⁶**a** / - quarter of a plate was enough for me. It was very hot that day, too. The temperature was thirty-six '**a** / **point** five degrees in the afternoon!

GRAMMAR

how much, how many; how + adjective

2 A 📑 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

1 How	How meat do you eat every week?			
a old	b much	c long		
2 How	is that building	?		
a high	b far	c many		
3 How	children does s	he have?		
a old	b tall	c many		
4 How	is your car? Ca	n all five of us get in?		
a big	b much	c old		
5 How	is it from the st	tation to your house?		
a much	b far	c tall		
6 How is your son now?		v?		
a many	b long	c old		
B Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.				

A: I'm at the station. How 1_____ is it to your house?

- B: It's about ten minutes by bus.
- A: And how ² does it take to walk?
- B: About half an hour.
- A: Hmm, OK. The bus, then. How ³ is the ticket?
- B: ⁴ much. It's only a pound, I think.
- A: And how ⁵ stops before I get off?
- B: Let me think ... it's four or five.

A: OK, thanks. Oh, it's here now! See you soon.

C 🜗 4.05 | Listen and check.

PRONUNCIATION

3A | intonation to check understanding | Match the questions (1–6) with the answers (a–f).

- 1 How much is this watch?
- 2 How many people are in your English class?
- 3 How far is the supermarket from here?
- **4** How long was the meeting?
- 5 How tall is your brother?
- 6 How old is your boss?
- **a** About twenty.
- **b** It's £350.
- c Four hours.
- d She's about thirty.
- e He's two metres.
- **f** It's about ten kilometres.
- B **4.06** | Match the responses (a–f) with the conversations (1–6) in Ex 3A. Then listen and check.
 - **a** Sorry, how far?

c Sorry, how much?

- **b** Sorry, how old?
 - Sorry, how many?

d Sorry, how tall?

f Sorry, how long?

C 🔄 4.07 | Listen again and repeat the responses.

READING

4 a Read the first paragraph of the article. Select a word to fill the gap.

a long b much c many

5 A Read the article. Match the questions (1–6) with the answers (a–f).

- 1 How long does the average person spend trying to sleep?
- 2 How many dreams do they have?
- 3 How much money do they spend on holidays?
- 4 How many cups of tea do they drink?
- 5 How long do they spend laughing?
- 6 How many words do they speak a day?
- a 75,900
- **b** three months
- c seven years and two months
- **d** £175,392
- e 4,200
- f over 100,000

B Read the article again. Are the sentences True (T) or False (F)?

- **1** The average person in the UK lives until they're just over 80.
- 2 People spend under 26 years sleeping.
- **3** People watch TV for eight and a half years.
- 4 People read nearly 500 books.
- 5 People spend over three years on social media.
- 6 People spend over a year doing exercise.
- 7 People spend just over three years on holiday.
- 8 Nearly twenty million people visit Spain.
- **9** People spend just under four and a half years eating.
- 10 People laugh for three weeks.



How do we spend our lives?

In the UK, most people live for about 81 years. But how ______ time do they spend doing different things?



Time for bed

Not many people like getting up on Monday mornings. The average person spends 26 years and seven months sleeping, but how long do they spend trying to sleep? The answer is seven years and two months! They also have over 100,000 dreams (but we don't know if they are good or bad).

Free time

In an ordinary lifetime, people in the UK watch TV for eight years and six months and read 540 books. That's a lot of reading! They also spend almost three years on social media and sixteen months doing sport and exercise.

Holidays

People in the UK are lucky because in an ordinary lifetime they spend three years and two months on holiday. They go everywhere, but Spain is the most popular country, with over 18 million visits a year. But how much does it all cost? About £175,392 per person.

Food and drink

People in the UK love tea, and an average person drinks 75,900 cups in their lifetime! They also eat for four years and five months.

How happy are they?

An average person in the UK laughs for three months at something funny, but cries nearly seventy litres of water when they're sad. They talk a lot, too. An average person says over 4,200 words a day, but we all know someone who speaks more than that!

Lesson 4C

HOW TO ... | get help in shops VOCABULARY | shops and shopping PRONUNCIATION | linking

VOCABULARY

shops and shopping

- 1 A 📑 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 - 1 You can buy a new computer at _____
 - **a** a sports shop **b** a pharmacy
 - c an electronics shop2 You can buy a shirt at a
 - **a** clothes shop **b** bookshop **c** hairdresser's
 - **3** You can buy bread at
 - **a** a butcher's **b** a dry-cleaners **c** a baker's
 - 4 You can buy medicine at _____
 - **a** a chemist's **b** a café **c** a greengrocer's
 - 5 You can buy pens and pencils at _____
 - a a shoe shopb a hairdresser'sc a stationers6 You can buy vegetables at
 - Tou can buy vegeta
 - **a** a hairdresser's **b** a greengrocer's
 - **c** a department store
 - **B** Add the missing letters to complete the shops.
 - 1 b_k__'s chocolate cake
 2 gr__ng__c_r's lettuce
 3 ph__ma_y
 4 bo__s__p
 5 cl_t__ss__p
 6 n_ws_ge__'s
 7 bu__he_'s
 - 8 d_y-cl_a_ers
 - 9 s__r_s _h_p
 - C Complete the shopping list with words from the box.

bread collect clean suit computer magazine football history book lamb medicine potatoes socks

How to ...

get help in shops

2 A 4.08 | Listen to someone shopping. Tick the shops he visits.

bookshop department store electronics shop shoe shop

- B **4.08** | Listen again. Number the things in the order you hear about them.
 - **a** The men's clothes department is on the third floor.
 - **b** The book costs £25.
 - c Ben tries on the shirt.
 - **d** Ben wants a receipt.
 - e Ben pays by phone.
 - **f** Ben wants to buy a book on Thai cooking.
 - **g** The book costs £10.
 - **h** Ben doesn't like the green shirt.

PRONUNCIATION

- **3**A **4.09** | linking | Listen to the phrases. Add links between the words that you hear.
 - 1 Can I pay by phone?
 - 2 Can I try it on?
- **3** How much is it?
- 4 Could I have a receipt?
- B 🚺 4.09 | Listen again and repeat.

SPEAKING

- **4** A Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.
 - A: Excuse me, can you ¹_____ me?
 - B: Yes, of course.
 - A: Do you ² laptop chargers? For this laptop?
 - B: Let me see ... yes, we do. Here you are.
 - A: Great, thanks. ³ much is it?
 - B: This one is thirty pounds.
 - A: Good, I'll ⁴ it. Can I pay ⁵ phone?
 - B: Yes, that's fine.
 - A: Could I 6 _____a receipt?
 - B: Sure. Here you are.
 - A: Thanks.
 - B 🚺 4.10 | Listen and check.
 - C 4.11 You are A in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.
 - D Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 4B.

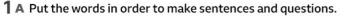


 \odot

Lesson 4D

GRAMMAR

should, shouldn't; imperatives



- 1 we / money / should / lot / a / bring / of ?
- 2 eat / shouldn't / there / you .
- **3** the / walk / grass / on / don't .
- 4 early / please / tomorrow / come .
- **5** here / how / wait / should / we / long ?
- 6 winter / they / in / visit / shouldn't.

B Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 You should ______ us in autumn.
- a visit **b** visiting c to visit 2 anything? a We should bring **b** Should we bring c Should bring we **3** How long **a** should stay we **b** we should stay c should we stay 4 take photos in here. **b** Please don't **c** Please not **a** Please no 5 be late for the walk tomorrow. b No **a** Don't c Aren't 6 A: Should I wear warm clothes? B: Yes. **a** you should wear **b** you do **c** you should

C Choose the correct words to complete the email.

Hi Sam,

How are you? I'm very excited that you and Gita have plans for a big holiday in Asia. Of course you should **'come / to come** to Thailand. I'd love to see you!

So, when ²**should you** / **you should** visit? ³**Come** / **Don't come** in the spring because it's very hot. From June until October it rains a lot, so if you come then, ⁴**bring** / **should bring** an umbrella! A good time is between November and March. Thailand is warm in the winter, though, so ⁵**pack** / **don't pack** shorts, T-shirts and dresses and ⁶**don't** / **shouldn't** bring a big jacket! And ⁷**worry** / **don't worry** about a hotel. You can stay with me!

⁸You should / Should you also travel around Thailand when you're here. I can recommend places that you ⁹should / shouldn't visit. ¹⁰Write / Don't write and tell me what you'd like to do and we can make plans!

Bye for now,

Arla

READING

2 A Read the blog post. Choose the correct option.

What is the writer's favourite season in South Korea? spring / summer / autumn / winter

Seasons in South Korea

South Korea is always beautiful, but you need to choose the right time of year to visit. Every season brings something different, so you should think about what you want when you visit. Summer is in July and August, but it's very hot and wet and usually rains a lot. Winter is from December to March and is cold (but not very cold like here in Canada).

Spring and Autumn are good times to visit. In Spring (March to June) you can see beautiful blossoms and flowers in the cities and the countryside. It's also dry and warm. But my favourite time is Autumn, from September to November. The temperature is warm, but not very hot, and it's a good time to visit the forests.

The days are sunny and the different colours of the trees are amazing. A very popular national park in Korea is Seoraksan. It's very big and you can see a lot of mountains. But I like Bukhansan, just outside the capital city of Seoul. It's easy to get there, it's beautiful and the cool air and warm temperature make it a really nice place to visit. Bring some food and some warm clothes with you, and don't forget your camera

or phone! You can walk up the mountain in four or five hours, or just sit and enjoy the colours of autumn.



ODR

∽★∎

B Read the blog post again. Choose the correct words.

- 1 The writer likes / doesn't like summer in South Korea.
- 2 He thinks winter in South Korea is **quite / really** cold.
- 3 In spring you can see blossoms only in / inside and outside the cities.
- 4 Autumn is two / three months long.
- **5** Autumn is a good time to visit **cities** / **forests**.
- 6 The writer's favourite national park is Seoraksan / Bukhansan.
- 7 You should bring something to **eat** / **drink** when you visit the park.
- 8 You can / can't relax if you visit Bukhansan.

3–4 REVIEW

GRAMMAR

- 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
 - 1 Is this / that your chair here?
 - 2 Your glasses are over here / there, on that desk.
 - **3** That / Those cups are dirty. Use this one here.
 - 4 Do you like **this / these** plants? I bought them at the supermarket.
 - 5 Hello! I'm over here / there!
 - 6 I don't usually like tomatoes, but I like this / these ones.
 - 7 This / These is our new sofa. What do you think?
 - 8 Are these / those your keys over here?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *have got*.

- **1** I ______a car. I don't need one in the city.
- 2 _____ Aran _____ a large house?
- 3 No, he _____.
- 4 ______ you _____ any brothers or sisters?5 Yes, I _____.
- 6 Ellie and Jim_____a big house and three cars. They_____a lot of money.
- 7 We _____ any milk. Can you go and buy some at the shop?
- 8 Malaika ______ a lovely plant in her bedroom.

3A Put the words in the correct order to make sentences and questions.

- 1 parks / here / aren't / there / near / many .
- 2 traffic / is / lot / there / of / a / here ?
- ${\bf 3}\,$ there / shops / some / close by / are .
- 4 near / are / restaurants / there / you / any ?
- 5 noise / much / isn't / here / there .
- ${\bf 6}\,$ there / there / cafés / of / are / lots .

B Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

a any lot lots much some

- 1 There is _____ bread in the kitchen, but not a lot.
- 2 There isn't _____ coffee or tea nothing at all!
- **3** There are _____ of potatoes. We don't need to buy more.
- 4 There isn't _____ pasta only a little.
- **5** There is a _____ of cheese.
- 6 There's _____ big bag of rice.

4 Complete the conversation with the correct form of was or were.

- A: Where ¹_____ you this morning? You ²_____ in class.
- B: I³ in a meeting at work. ⁴ all the other students there?
- A: Yes, they ⁵_____. But the teacher ⁶_____!
- B: Really? Why ⁷ he there?
- A: He ⁸______ ill, so there was another teacher. It a ⁹_____ good class, though. A lot of fun.

5 A Match (1–6) to (a–f) to make questions.

- 1 How tall
- 2 How many
- 3 How far
- 4 How long
- 5 How much
- 6 How big
- a countries are there in Africa?
- **b** is your kitchen?
- c is Mount Kilimanjaro?
- **d** was your meeting?
- e is your home from your office?
- f money have you got?
- **B** Match the answers (a–f) with the questions (1–6) in Ex 5A.
 - a It's very small.
 - **b** I think there are 54.
 - c It's about two miles.
 - **d** It was three hours!
 - e I think it's around 9,000 metres.
 - **f** I've got twenty pounds with me.
- C Choose the correct words to complete the conversations.
 - 1 A: How tall / high is your daughter now?B: She's already one metre fifty centimetres!
 - 2 A: How many / much coffee do you drink?
 - B: A lot / Much! About five cups a day.
 - 3 A: How many / old is Graham?B: I'm not sure. I think he's about thirty.
 - 4 A: How long / far is your office from your home?B: About two kilometres. I usually walk there.
 - **5** A: How **much / many** brothers and sisters have you got?
 - B: Three. Two brothers and one sister.
 - 6 A: How long / far is your English class?
 - B: It's an hour and a half. Do you want to meet after it finishes?

6 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

b Aren't

- 1 <u>No</u> write your answers in the book.
 - c Don't
- 2 <u>What I should</u> bring with me? **a** What do I should
- **b** What should I

c should visit

c What should

a Not

- **3** A: Should we visit in summer?
 - B: Yes, you <u>do</u>.
 - **a** should **b** visit
- **4** Please <u>you come</u> early.
 - **a** do you come **b** come **c** do come

REVIEW 3

VOCABULARY

7 A Complete the text with words from the box.

bedrooms cupboards desk fridge living office quiet small

This is my house. It's 1 but I like it. It has two 2 . I sleep in one, and the other is a home 3 where I work. In it I've got a computer on a big 4 . It's a great place to work because it's very 5 Downstairs I have a big 6 room and a small kitchen. The kitchen is nice, with lots of 7 and a big 8 to keep my food in.

B Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

different difficult large quiet short soft

- 1 These two desks are _____ one is black and one is dark blue.
- 2 It's very _____ on my street all you can hear is the birds.
- **3** It's ______to get up early every morning, but I can do it for a while.
- 4 This sofa is too _____ for this room I can't walk round it!
- 5 Feel how _____ this towel is, it's lovely!
- 6 Every morning, I spend a ______ time in the garden about five minutes before I go to work.

C Match the adjectives (1–6) with their opposites (a–f) from Ex 7B.

- **1** loud
- 2 small
- 3 hard
- 4 long
- 5 the same
- 6 easy
- 8 Complete the conversations with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.
 - **1** A: Here. These flowers are f_____ you.
 - B: Thank you. How n_____ of you!
 - 2 A: S_____ I'm late.
 - B: N_____ problem.
 - **3** A: Great to s_____you. B: You t_____.
 - 4 A: I'm f_____. That was delicious!
 - B: G_____you liked it!
 - **5** A: Have a s_____journey home.
 - B: T_____ you for the lovely evening!

9 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- My suit is dirty. Is there a ______ near here?
 a greengrocer's b hairdresser's c dry cleaner's
- 2 2/7 = July the ______.
- **a** second **b** twelfth **c** twenty-second
- **3** 101 is just ______a hundred.
- **a** under **b** exactly **c** over
- 4 If you go to the _____, can you get me some bread?
- **a** baker's **b** butcher's **c** shoe shop
- 5 Let's meet at the _____ on the corner for lunch.a electronics shopb café
 - c department store
- 6 1/4 is the same as a _____. a quarter b point c half

10 A Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

after (x2) ago (x2) in (x2) last (x2) on yesterday (x2)

- 1 I was in California _____ the summer. It was very hot!
- 2 Let's speak about this _____ the break.
- **3** Her birthday was _____ 14 June.
- 4 Where were you _____ night?
- 5 Our last holiday was two years _____!
- 6 Carol wasn't in class ______afternoon.
- 7 I need to speak to you _____ lunch.
- 8 The meeting wasn't _____, it was two days
- 9 Where was the game _____ weekend?
- 10 We often visit Greece _____ the spring.

B Choose the correct answers to complete the text.

Every four years, ¹**in** / **at** June and July, the FIFA Women's World Cup happens. The first Women's World Cup was in China ²**in** / **at** 1991. In 2015 fiftytwo ³- / **point** five six million watched the final, but in 2019, almost ⁴**a** / **the** quarter of the world watched the competition. That's one ⁵**point** / **and** two billion people! The number of people who watched the final that year was two hundred ⁵**and** / – sixty million.



click here for more books https://t.me/EnglishZoneTextBooks 31

Lesson 5A

VOCABULARY

time phrases (2)

1 A Match (1–6) to (a–f) to make sentences.

- 1 I was at home all
- **2** This morning I was in a meeting from 9 a.m.
- **3** I worked in a supermarket
- 4 I started work at 10 a.m. and finished two hours
- 5 We stayed in a hotel by the sea for
- 6 My brother usually goes running
- a when I was 18.
- **b** day yesterday.
- **c** two weeks.
- **d** to 11.
- e later.
- **f** before breakfast.

B Thoose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I was in meetingsmorning.a allb forc before2 I worked in a caféI started college.
- **a** from **b** later **c** before
- **3** _____ 2017 to 2020 I worked in a bank. **a** When **b** From **c** For
- **4** We visited our friends in Turkey in January, then again two months _____!
- a before **b** later **c** from
- **5** _____ Nia was a teenager, she lived in York.
- a When **b** From **c** For
- 6 Santiago worked in a hospital five years. **a** from **b** when **c** for

C Complete the text with a time phrase in each gap.

From 2016 ¹ 2017, ² I was 18, I lived in Italy. I wanted to live in another country ⁸ I started university. I worked as a waiter in a small town ⁴ a year, at a restaurant, called Gino's. It was great! I worked ⁵ weekend, but ⁶



Monday to

Friday, I travelled to lots of places in Europe. I visited beautiful beaches and the mountains, and I talked to lots of interesting people. Three years , 8 I finished university, I returned to the little town on holiday, but it was very different. The restaurant was a shoe shop and the people I worked with weren't there anymore.

GRAMMAR

past simple: regular verbs

- 2 A S Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 - 1 You worked / You didn't work / Did you work in a shop when you were a teenager?
 - **2** Did she study / She studied / Did she studied French at school?
 - **3** We **listen / listened / did listen** to classical music all evening.
 - 4 Marisa didn't like / didn't liked / like the film.
 - 5 You did walk / Did you walk / You walked to work this morning?
 - 6 A: Did you enjoy the lesson?B: Yes, I enjoyed / I was / I did. It was great!
 - B Complete the blog post with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

	\otimes		
A few years ago, I ¹	(decide) to do something		
different with my life. I really	² (want) to travel,		
but I ³ (not want) to only go on holiday.			
I ⁴ (study) Spanish at school and ⁵			
(remember) a lot of it, so I ⁶	(look) online for a		
job teaching English. There v	vas an advertisement for a		
job in Argentina, so I ⁷ (phone) the company			
and we ⁸ (talk) at	oout the job.		
They ⁹ (ask) me lo	ots of questions but they		
¹⁰ (not offer) me a job. Then, a few days later,			
they ¹¹ (call) again. This time, it was good			
news! Three weeks later I was in Buenos Aires.			
I ¹² (live) there for	r two years. 🔿 🗔 🄗		

PRONUNCIATION

- **3** A **5.01** |-*ed* ending of regular verbs | Listen to the sentences. Choose the correct endings of the past simple verbs.
 - 1 We watched a really good film on TV last night. /t/ / /d/ / /Id/
 - 2~ Last year Salma visited London for the first time. /t/ / /d/ / /Id/
 - ${\bf 3}$ | played football with my friends on Sunday. /t/ / /d/ / /1d/
 - 4 | stopped eating meat last year. /t/ / /d/ / /ɪd/
 - $5\,$ Ben wanted to study Russian at school. /t/ / /d/ / /ɪd/
 - 6 Everyone looked tired at the end of the day. /t/ / /d/ / /1d/
 - 7 When she was young, Daria lived in Moldova. /t/ / /d/ / /1d/
 - 8 | started work early this morning. /t/ / /d/ / /ɪd/
 - B 🜗 5.01 | Listen again and repeat the sentences.

READING

4 Read the text. Select a picture to answer the question.

This athlete started sport when she was only five years old. She is now a British high jump champion.

Which photo does this describe?



5 A Read the article and answer the questions.

- 1 Where does Nicholas's foundation work now?
- 2 Where did Morgan Lake travel in 2016?

B Read the article again. Choose the correct option (a-c) to complete the sentences.

Nicholas Lowinger wanted to take his to the children's home.
 a lights b mum c new shoes
 Many children at the place he visited didn't have

a any shoes **b** food c old shoes 3 He started his organisation when he was c fifteen a five **b** ten 4 Shops and companies give Nicholas **b** new shoes **c** money a old shoes 5 Morgan Lake's helped her to become an athlete. **b** teacher c father a mother

- 6 In 2009 she was first in the under-thirteen pentathlon
- a in the world b in the UK c in Europe
 7 In 2016 she was the first British woman to the high jump final since 1992.
- **a** go to **b** lose **c** win
- 8 In 2020, Morgan was a _____ and an athlete.
 - **a** student **b** waitress **c** teacher

Amazing lives

Sometimes people do amazing things when they're very young. Here are two people who started when they were five years old.

Nicholas Lowinger

Nicholas Lowinger lives in Rhode Island in the USA. When he was five years old, he visited a children's home (a place where boys and girls stay if they don't have a place to live). Nicholas wanted to wear his new shoes. His mother didn't want him to, but he didn't know why. When they arrived at the children's home, there were lots of boys and girls without shoes, or who had very old shoes. Nicholas wanted to give his shoes to the children, but he didn't stop there. Five years later, in 2010, he started an organisation to help children's homes. Now the organisation, called Gotta Have Sole, works all over the USA. It collects new shoes from shops and shoe companies, and also has sports competitions to make money for children's homes.

Morgan Lake

Some people are born to win, and Morgan Lake is one of those people. When she was five years old, she started sport, and when she was seven, her dad helped her enter competitions at her local sports club. In 2009, when she was twelve, she was the underthirteen UK champion for the pentathlon (an athletics competition with five events). She continued to win competitions and in 2016 she travelled to Rio de Janeiro in Brazil as part of the British Olympic team. In Rio she was the first British woman to get to a final in the high jump since 1992. In 2020 she trained and studied psychology at university at the same time. She has a great future as one of Britain's top athletes.

Lesson 5B

VOCABULARY

life events

- 1 A Sector Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.
 - 1 | hope | _____ my driving test the first time | take it.
 - **a** become **b** learn **c** pass
 - 2 When did you _____ your best friend?
 - a meetb leavec get3 Sandraschool when she was sixteen.
 - a got b left c learnt
 - 4 We want to _____ married next summer.
 - a meet b get c pass5 Richard wants to ______a teacher after university.
 - a learnb becomec get6 Did youto swim at school?
 - a learn **b** become **c** pass
 - **B** Put the words in brackets in order to complete the sentences.
 - 1 My brother wants to ______ (new / a / job / get) as a digital designer.
 - 2 You need to study a lot if you want to (exams / your / pass) this year.
 - 3 Now he's 17, Thomas can (to / learn / drive).
 - 4 | think | ______ (husband / my / met / future) at the party last weekend.
 - **5** If you're not happy, you should (job / your / leave).
 - 6 After university, Angela wants to (a / doctor / become).

C Choose the correct words to complete the advert.

Central Adult Education Centre

Here at Central Adult Education Centre, we have lots of different courses to help you in life. Many of our students ¹leave / get school at sixteen, then find it



difficult to ²become / get a good job. We can help you learn important skills that you need to ³get / pass your exams or go to university. Some of our students ⁴become / get teachers and doctors! It's not just work skills. We can help you ⁵pass / learn to drive with our excellent teachers. And we're a friendly place. Lots of students ⁶get / meet their best friends here! So don't wait. Call us today!

GRAMMAR

past simple: irregular verbs; wh- questions

2 A Complete the conversation with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- A: 1_____ you _____ (go) to the party?
- B: Yes, I did. It was brilliant.
- A: Who² you (see) there?
- B: I³ (see) my old friend, Marcus.
- A: Who's Marcus?
- B: I⁴ (know) him at university. We were really good friends, but after we finished we both
 <u>6</u> (go) back to our home towns and
 <u>6</u> (not speak) for a long time.
- A: Why was that?
- B: I don't know. We just ⁷ (lose) contact. But then last night we ⁸ (meet) again. A: Why ⁹ he (come) to London?
- B: For work. He ¹⁰_____ (get) a new job here.

B 📑 The sentences and questions below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Where <u>you went</u> to school when you were a child?
- **a** do you go **b** did you go **c** you go
- **2** I <u>win</u> a competition last month.
 - **a** did won **b** did win
- **3** I <u>don't come</u> home late last night.
 - **a** didn't come **b** didn't came **c** don't came

c won

- 4 How long do Bailey live in New York?
 - **a** did Bailey live **b** did Bailey lived **c** Bailey lived

C Rewrite the irregular past simple sentences.

- 1 I didn't wake up early. I woke up early . (+)
- 2 I left university last year. _____(When...?)
- 3 Davina went to work yesterday. _____ (-)
- 4 Emir gave her the letters. (Did...?)
- 5 We didn't know she was there. (+)
- 6 He had a lot of work last week. (-)
- 7 I rang Karla at 8 p.m. (What time...?)
- 8 We didn't meet at the party. (+)

PRONUNCIATION

3 A 5.03 | irregular verbs | Listen and choose the correct vowel sounds in the irregular past simple verbs.

- 1 left /e/ / /əʊ/ / /æ/
- 2 drove /e/ / /əu/ / /æ/
- 3 had /e/ / /əʊ/ / /æ/
- 4 woke up /e/ / /əʊ/ / /æ/
- 5 went /e/ / /əʊ/ / /æ/
- 6 drank /e/ / /əʊ/ / /æ/
- 7 said /e/ / /əʊ/ / /æ/
- 8 rang /e/ / /əʊ/ / /æ/

B 💿 5.03 | Listen again and repeat.

D 5.02 | Listen and check.

LISTENING

4A 5.04 | Listen to Manuel, Taylor and Craig describing surprises. Answer the questions.

Which person ...

- 1 had a bad experience?
- 2 was in a strange place for a party?
- 3 met an old friend?

B 5.04 | Listen again. Are the sentences True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Manuel's boss asked him to go home after work.
- 2 He thought everyone knew it was his birthday.
- **3** Taylor took her driving test more than once before she passed.
- 4 She was happy because the weather was good.
- 5 Craig drove to university alone.
- 6 He and Jamie became friends again.

C 🚺 5.04 | Listen again and choose the correct option.

- 1 How old was Manuel on his birthday?
- **a** 20 **b** 21 **c** 23
- 2 What did he eat?
 - a fruit **b** vegetables **c** cake
- **3** How far was the hotel from where Taylor and her friends lived?
 - **a** 10 km **b** 100 km **c** 1,000 km
- **4** How long did Taylor wait for the mechanic?
- **a** half an hour **b** two hours **c** three hours
- **5** How many people did Craig share the apartment with?
- **a** two **b** three **c** four
- 6 How old was Jamie when he moved away?
- a three **b** seven **c** eleven

WRITING

a mini-bio

- 5A Read Jason Murphy's mini-bio. Match the headings (a-e) with the paragraphs (1-5).
 - **a** education
 - **b** hobbies
 - c introduction
 - **d** early life
 - e work experience
 - **B** Complete the sentences with one or two words. Then check your answers in Jason's mini-bio.
 - 1 I finished secondary school in 2012, went to the University of Durham, where I studied art history.
 - 2 I finished university in 2015. I worked as an intern for Brash Design.
 - 3 I worked as an intern for a year, before they employed me full-time for two years. I started working for Microdesign.io as a manager of a small design team.



Jason Murphy

¹My name's Jason Murphy and I'm a digital designer. Welcome to my profile.

²I was born on 29 June, 1994 in Cambridge, UK, but moved to London when I was two and grew up there.

³I finished secondary school in 2012, then went to the University of Durham, where I studied art history. I always enjoyed art both at school and at home and had my first exhibition when I was 14. I really enjoyed my university course and when I was there I started making art on my computer. That was when I discovered I wanted to work in digital design.

⁴I finished university in 2015. After that I worked as an intern for Brash Design. When I was there I designed websites. I worked as an intern for a year, before they employed me full-time for two years. Next, I started working for Microdesign.io as a manager of a small design team. This is where I work now and I really enjoy my job.

⁵My interests include mountain biking and visiting other countries with my girlfriend.

6 Use the information below to write a mini-bio of Alicia.

Name: Alicia Zamora Job: teacher Date of birth: 23/02/96 Place of birth: Sydney, Australia

Education 2005–2009: St George High School 2009–2013: Sydney State University – BA Education

Work experience

2012–2013: Trainee teacher, Sandare High School 2013–2018: Teacher, Victoria High School 2018–present: Teacher, Lowbeach High School

Interests: swimming, video games, going to restaurants

Lesson 5C

HOW TO ... | apologise and make excuses VOCABULARY | excuses; saying the time PRONUNCIATION | intonation for apologising

VOCABULARY

excuses

- Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.
 - 1 Sorry I'm late. I _____ my train and waited an hour for the next one.
 - a lost b missed c was
 - 2 I couldn't do my work. My wifi was
 - **a** down **b** up **c** on
 - **3** I didn't _____ my alarm. That's why I was late for the meeting.
 - a get **b** hear **c** listen
 - 4 My computer broke and I_____ all my work.a leftb missedc lost
 - **5** I my bag in a taxi yesterday evening.
 - a lost b left c missed
 - 6 I'm really sorry, my bus _____ late.
 - a got **b** became **c** was

saying the time

2 Match the times (1–8) with the phrases (a–h).

- 108.00aten past seven212.45bseventeen minutes past eleven319:10ctwo minutes past nine409.02dquarter past three504.30eeight o'clock623.17fquarter to one
- 7 10.30 g half past four
- **8** 15.15
- **h** ten thirty

How to ...

apologise and make excuses

- **3**A **5.05** | Listen to the conversations. Number the excuses in the order you hear them.
 - **a** The wifi is down.
 - **b** The bus was late.
 - c The person had the wrong time.
 - B 🚺 5.05 | Listen again and choose the correct options.
 - 1 Chris is late for the third time this day / week / month.
 - 2 His shirt is on the bus / at home / dirty.
 - **3** Mr Wilson thinks Mark is **early / on time / late**.
 - 4 The meeting was at half past two / three / four.
 - 5 Tobias needs an email / a report / wifi.
 - 6 The problem happened because Tanya changed school / job / house.

- C **5.06** | Listen to the recording. Write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.
- 1 2
- 3

PRONUNCIATION

- **4**A **5.07** | intonation for apologising | Listen to people apologising. Do the people sound sorry (S) or not sorry (NS)?
 - 1 S/NS
 - 2 S/NS
 - 3 S/NS
 - B 🚺 5.08 | Listen and repeat the good apologies.

SPEAKING

5 A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

late problem really sorry wrong

- A: Where were you? You're late.
- B: I know, I'm ¹_____ sorry. There was a ²_____ with my car.
- A: OK ...
- B: Then the bus was ³
- A: That's all right. But let's go through. People are here to see your presentation now.
- B: What do you mean? Don't we start at 10.30?
- A: No, the meeting was at ten. We only have thirty minutes left.
- B: Oh, no. I had the 4_____ time! I'm so
- A: It's OK, but let's go now!

B: Yes, of course.

- B **5.09** | Listen to the conversation and check your answers.
- C 5.10 You are B in the conversation in Ex 5A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.
- **D** Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 5B.



Lesson 5D

GRAMMAR

a bit

adjectives and modifiers

- 1 A 📑 The sentences and questions below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.
 - 1 That's a watch very beautiful.
 - a very beautiful watchb beautiful very watchc very watch beautiful
 - 2 I'm so much tired after that long walk.
 - **a** so really tired **b** much so tired **c** so tired
 - **3** This film is <u>a bit</u> interesting.
 - **b** quite **c** too
 - 4 Ben's got two <u>new and black</u> phones.
 - **a** new black **b** a new and a black
 - c news and blacks

B Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 restaurant / noisy / this / too / is / .
- 2 was / boring / that / bit / book / a / .
- 3 nice / looks / shirt / your / .
- **4** a / Paris / beautiful / city / is / .
- **5** about / so / happened / angry / feel / I / what / .
- 6 too / that / expensive / me / is / car / for / .
- 7 really / the / was / good / party / .
- 8 very / here / it / busy / looks / in / .

C Choose the correct words to complete the comments.

A Marco

Can anyone recommend a ¹good restaurant / restaurant good in town? I want to take my girlfriend somewhere ²really / too nice for her birthday.

Comments

Kaylie:

Don't go to Sortonis, the ³**new and Italian** place / **new Italian place**. It's ⁴**too** / **very much** expensive and the menu is ⁵**so** / **so much** boring!

Wei:

I recommend the Greek place on the High Street. The food is ⁶**delicious** / **too delicious** and the music is ⁷**very** / **so much** nice.

Alexis:

We really like Carla's Café. The service is ⁸**a bit** / **bit** slow, but the food always ⁹**good looks** / **looks good** and it's ¹⁰**quite** / **bit** cheap.

LISTENING

2A **● 5.11** | Listen and match the conversations (1–3) with the photos (A–C).







B 5.11 | Listen again and answer the questions. In which conversation (1–3) ...

- **a** does the person say when they woke up?
- **b** did the person do something they always do?
- c did the person not enjoy their weekend?
- **d** does the person mention their family?
- e did something with their girlfriend?
- **f** did the person have a really good weekend?
- C 5.11 | Complete the sentences and questions with one word in each gap. Then listen again and check.
 - 1 How _____ your weekend?
 - 2 It was a _____ boring, really.
 - 3 What _____you do?
 - 4 I went for a _____ on Saturday.
 - **5** I ______to a party on Saturday.
 - 6 When did you _____ home?
 - 7 My weekend was _____, thanks.
 - 8 Who did you go _____?

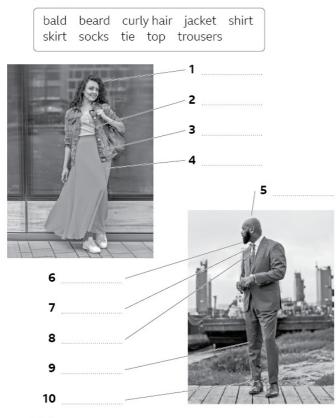
Lesson 6A

GRAMMAR | present continuous VOCABULARY | clothes and appearance PRONUNCIATION | weak form of *are*

VOCABULARY

clothes and appearance

1 A Match the words in the box to the places in the photos (1–10).



B 📑 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

1 I never wear shoes without

a jeans **b** socks **c** shorts

- 2 Can you open that window for me, please? I'm too to reach it.
 - **a** short **b** tall **c** curly
- **3** Have you got a ______ to wear to your job interview tomorrow?
- a T-shirt b coat c suit 4 Julia's the one with , blonde hair.
- **a** short **b** dark **c** bald
- **5** Bring your _____, it's cold today.
- **a** skirt **b** top **c** coat
- **6** Angelika wore a beautiful _____ when she got married.
 - a trousers b dress c tie

C Choose the correct words to complete the description.

I'm quite ¹tall / short (1m 80cm) and I've got long, ²bald / straight hair. I've got brown eyes and ³yellow / blonde hair. I'm a lawyer, so I always wear a ⁴suit / jumper at work, but in summer when it's warm, I wear ⁵coats / dresses to the office. At the weekend, I wear a T-shirt and ⁶jeans / top.

GRAMMAR

present continuous

2A Complete the message with the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

Hi Taylor! How are things? I¹ (enjoy) my holiday in Paris, 1² (sit) outside at a lovely café and I 3 (watch) people walk by. It's lovely here. A woman (play) the piano in the street, and I 5 (have) a coffee and cake. It 6 (not rain) today, it's sunny. Jim's not with me at the moment, he ⁷ (visit) a museum this morning. We're here for another two days before we come home, which I⁸ (not think) about! What about you? What ⁹ you (do) today? 10 you (work)?

B The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Dee and Graeme <u>are liking</u> the film.
- **a** is liking **b** are like **c** like
- 2 Where <u>she is going</u>?
 - **a** she goes **b** is she going **c** does she go
- **3** I'm <u>no doing</u> my homework at the moment.
 - a not doing **b** not do **c** don't do
- **4** A: Are you listening to me?
 - B: Yes, <u>I listen</u>.
 - a Ido b Iam c I'm listen
- C Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
 - 1 playing / Soren and Lazlo / are / football .
 - 2 from / Mila / working / today / home / isn't.
 - 3 doing / what / you / are ?
 - 4 TV / moment / I'm / at / watching / the .
 - **5** making / your brother / video / is / a?
 - 6 sitting / her / Renata / at / desk / isn't .
 - 7 Charlie / going / is / where ?
 - 8 French / I'm / moment / at / studying / the .

PRONUNCIATION

3 A **6.01** | weak form of *are* | Listen to five questions. How many words are there in each question?

1	3	5
2	4	

B 6.01 | Listen again and write the two stressed words in each question. Then listen and repeat.



LISTENING

4A 1 6.02 | Listen to a telephone conversation and answer the questions.

- 1 Where is Nikki?
- 2 Where is Clive?
- B 6.02 | Listen again. Number the actions in the order you hear about them.
 - **a** Nikki is waiting for her bags.
 - **b** Nikki tells Clive what she looks like.
 - c Nikki calls Clive.
 - d Clive calls Nikki.
 - e Clive says he's late.
 - f Nikki sees Clive.
- C **6.02** | Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences. Then listen again and check.
 - 1 Clive is late because of _____
 - **a** the weather
 - ${\boldsymbol{\mathsf{b}}}$ the traffic
 - ${\bf c}~$ other customers
 - 2 He wants Nikki to wait ...
 - a inside the airport
 - **b** outside the airport
 - c in the car park
 - 3 Nikki asks to call Clive back because
 - a she's going through security
 - **b** her phone is broken
 - c she's busy
 - 4 Nikki is _____.
 - **a** tall
 - ${\bm b} \ {\rm short}$
 - c bald
 - 5 She's got _____ hair.
 - **a** short, straight, blonde
 - **b** long, straight, blonde
 - c long, straight, red
 - 6 She's wearing
 - **a** jeans and a black jacket
 - **b** jeans and a blue jacket
 - c shorts and a black jacket

WRITING

write a description of a group photo

5 📑 💽 6.03 | Listen to the recording. Choose the words in the competition advert that are different from what you hear.

GOOD GROUP MOMENT!

Do you have a good photo of a group moment you'd like to show? Send it to us with a long description and say why it was great. You can win a laptop!

6A Read Diya's description of the photo. Which person (A-E) is Diya in the photo?

This was my first day in my job, two months ago. I'm wearing my new jacket and jeans. The team is very friendly. My boss Gina is really nice. She's got short, straight hair and she's smiling. Micah is standing next to me. He's funny and tells lots of jokes. He's got dark, curly hair and he's wearing a T-shirt. Tom has a moustache and is wearing a shirt. I usually have lunch with Angela. She's got curly hair and she's smiling. She's great! I really like my team.

B Read the description again. Match the names with the people in the photo (A–E).

- 1 Gina
- 2 Micah
- 3 Tom
- 4 Angela

C Read the description in Ex 6A again and find these things.

- 1 four words or phrases to describe clothes
- 2 words or phrases to describe appearance
- 3 three verbs to describe an activity at the moment

D Write a description of a group photo for the competition advert in Ex 5. Write 80–100 words.

39

Lesson 6B

VOCABULARY

common adjectives (2)

1 A 📑 Write a word to fill the gaps.

adjective	opposite		
quick/fast	slow		
1	quiet		
expensive	2		
boring	3		
4	easy		
dangerous	5		

B Match (1-6) to (a-f) to make sentences.

- 1 This exercise is really difficult. Please
- 2 Hello? Hello? Sorry. It's very noisy
- 3 Please don't drive so fast –
- 4 The bus is very slow
- 5 This chair is really uncomfortable -
- 6 Nice headphones -
- **a** when there's a lot of traffic.
- **b** can I sit in that one?
- c in here and I can't hear you.
- d were they expensive?
- e can you help me?
- **f** it's dangerous.

transport collocations

2 Complete the text with the correct form of the words and phrases in the box.

get off get on get out of go by ride take

I'm a doctor and I usually 1 my bike to work, but today was very cold. I thought I'd 2 car, but it didn't start! After that I 3 the car and decided to 4 the bus to the hospital. It was really easy. When you 5 the bus you touch a machine with your credit card, then touch it again to pay when you 6 I enjoyed the journey, but I prefer to ride my bike when it's warm!



GRAMMAR

comparative adjectives

- **3** A Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 - 1 Which is _____, your house or my house?
 - a bigger **b** more big **c** big
 - 2 Greta is _____ in her new job than her old one.a happy b more happy c happier
 - **3** This café is than that one.
 - a more nice **b** more nicer **c** nicer
 - **4** Which is _____, a train or a bus?
 - a fast **b** faster **c** more fast
 - **5** My new phone is _____ than my old one.
 - a goodb betterc more good6 The jacket isexpensive than the shirt.a moreb the morec most
 - **B** Complete the survey results with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

The results are in!

Last month we asked you to tell us what you think of different types of transport in our city. First, we asked you which is 1_____ (easy) to use, the bus or the train. More of you (sixty percent) said the train. Forty percent of you think buses are 2_____ (difficult) because they're often late. A lot of people said they felt 3_____ (happy) on the train too, because it's 4_____ (comfortable) than the bus.

Next we wanted to know if you thought the bus or a taxi was ⁵ (good). Guess what? Fiftyfive percent of you said the bus! This is because it's ⁶ (big) than a taxi, so you can relax more when you get on. However, when it's busy, 80% think a bus is ⁷ (bad) than a taxi, even though buses are ⁸ (cheap).

PRONUNCIATION

4A 4 6.04 | sentence stress | Listen to the sentences and underline the stressed words.

- 1 It's bigger than a house.
- 2 They're worse than cars.
- **3** It's more expensive than a holiday.
- **4** They're smaller than bikes.
- **5** It's easier than that.
- 6 They're more comfortable than planes.
- B 🚺 6.04 | Listen again and repeat.

READING

Getting around

Is your journey from A to B boring? Look at these unusual forms of transport from around the world. They make it fun to travel!

The Chiva Express, Ecuador



The Chiva Express is not a normal bus. It's changed so that it can run on a train line! It takes tourists up mountains to see the beautiful views. OK, there are faster ways to travel, but this is more interesting. It has big seats and food and drink services. And if you want an even better experience, you can sit on the roof! So next time you're in Ecuador and want to see the mountains, take this bus!

Amfibus, the Netherlands



This starts as a tour of the modern city of Rotterdam. Fifty passengers can get on the bus and look at famous places in the city centre. But then the bus takes a different route and goes into the Maas River! Yes, it's a bus that becomes a ferry, and can go on both land and water. On the water, the city becomes more interesting because you can see places that you can't see from the land.

Central-Mid-Levels Escalator, Hong Kong



Do you like walking everywhere, but get tired? Well in Hong Kong, it's easier to walk than in other places. This escalator takes you through the centre of the city. It's a great way to visit museums, shops and parks. It's free, and at 800 metres long, there's no outside escalator in the world that's longer than this one.

- **5** A Read the article quickly. Match each form of transport with where it travels (1–3).
 - 1 the city centre
 - 2 on a river
 - 3 in mountains
 - **B** Read the article again. Which type of transport from the article does each sentence describe? Write C (Chiva Express), A (Amfibus) or E (Central-Mid-Levels Escalator).
 - **1** This shows you unusual parts of the city.
 - 2 This travels to a high place.
 - **3** You don't need to pay to use it.
 - 4 You can sit in an unusual place.
 - 5 This is in Europe.
 - 6 These are usually inside, but not here.
 - C Read the article again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?
 - 1 The Chiva Express is uncomfortable.
 - 2 You can eat on the Chiva Express.
 - **3** Amfibus can take more than fifty passengers.
 - **4** You can see different places in the city from the Maas river.
 - **5** The Central-Mid-Levels Escalator is very long.

Lesson 6C

VOCABULARY

places

1 A 📑 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 When you get to the _____, go straight on.a crossroads b bridge c lights
- 2 Excuse me, is there a car _____ near here?
- a roads **b** park **c** lights
- **3** That's a bridge, you can't drive across it. **a** cross **b** traffic **c** pedestrian
- **4** In the summer we like to walk in the _____ in the evenings.
 - **a** crossroads **b** traffic lights **c** square
- 5 We live at the _____ of the road.
- **a** end **b** cross **c** pedestrian
- 6 Wait for the traffic _____ to turn green.
- **a** roads **b** bridge **c** lights

B Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A: Excuse me, do you know where Molly's Café is?
- B: Yes, walk across the ¹square / statue, then cross the ²traffic lights / pedestrian bridge. Then you'll come to a ³crossroads / straight on. Go to the ⁴finish / end of the road, then turn left.
- A: Left, OK.
- B: Go along that road and Molly's Café is on the ⁵corner / statue, opposite the car ⁶park / stop.

C Complete the text with words in the box.

bridge end parks square statue traffic

I love my town. It's not big, but it's very old. In the centre is a large 1 ______ with cafés where people sit outside and drink coffee. In the middle of that there's a 2 ______ of the man who built the town. At the 3 ______ of a long road with lots of trees, there's a river, with an old pedestrian 4 ______. It's a nice place to stop and enjoy the view. People like to come to my town, but there are lots of 5 lights and not many car 6 ______, which can make it difficult to visit.

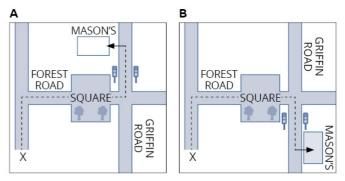
How to ...

give directions

2A 4 6.05 | Listen to Monika asking for directions. Answer the questions.

- 1 What type of shop does she want to go to?
- 2 What type of shop does the man suggest?
- 3 How many minutes does it take to get there?

B 6.05 | Listen again and choose Monika's route (A or B).



PRONUNCIATION

3 A **5 6.06** | stress to correct information | Listen and underline the stressed word in each answer.

- **1** A: So at the crossroads, I turn right.
 - B: No, at the crossroads you turn left.
- **2** A: OK. So I walk down this street, then stop at the café, right?
 - B: No, you go past the café.
- 3 A OK, so I go down Vernon Drive?B: No, it's Verdon Drive.
- B 🚺 6.07 | Listen to the answers again and repeat.

SPEAKING

4 A Complete the conversation.

- A: Excuse me, how do you get to the station?
- B: Go to the ¹e_____ of the road, and ²t_____ left at the corner.
- A: OK.
- B: Go ³p_____ the statue and there's a crossroads.
- A: Yes.
- B: Go ⁴s..... on at the crossroads into Creen Road.
- A: Green Road. Got it.
- B: No, it's Creen Road.
- A: Ah, OK, sorry. Creen Road.
- B: The station is ⁵o_____your left.
- A: Thank you.
- B 🚺 6.08 | Listen and check.
- C 6.09 You are B in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.
- D Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 4B.

Lesson 6D

GRAMMAR

prepositions and adverbs of movement

- **1** A Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
 - 1 I saw you earlier when you got **out of / off** the taxi.
 - 2 She walked over / across the square.
 - **3** If you walk **into** / **up** the hill, you can see the sea.
 - 4 Come off / towards me a bit, so you're in the photo!
 - 5 Get off / out of the bus at the third stop.
 - 6 This is your captain speaking. We are now flying **up** / **over** Baku.
 - 7 Go along / away from this road for 500 metres. The park is on your right.
 - 8 She walked straight off / past me in the street.

B 📑 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 The children like to meet and play <u>off</u> the bridge.
 a under
 b through
 c down
- 2 He just walked <u>across</u> me and didn't say goodbye.a off b away from c down
- **3** Before we play football, we run <u>along</u> the park.**a** onto**b** off**c** around
- 4 I can't get on there, there's not enough space.
 - a along b through c off

READING

- **2A** Read the article. What is 're-wilding'? Choose the best definition.
 - 1 introducing animals into cities
 - 2 introducing people into cities
 - 3 introducing flowers and plants into cities
 - **B** Read the article again. Number these things in the order you read about them.
 - a bus stops
 - **b** mental health
 - c cities get bigger
 - d a city park
 - e gardens
 - f the city air

C Read the article again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 'Re-wilding' is an old idea.
- 2 You don't need to have a garden to plant flowers.
- **3** In some places, flowers grow on the top of buses.
- 4 Plants at the side of the road look nice in winter.
- 5 More nature in cities is good for our health.
- 6 Buildings with plants are cold in the summer.

The return of nature

Thousands of years ago, people started to live in cities. Today, billions of people around the world live in cities. However, as cities get bigger, we lose more and more wild plants and trees.



But this is changing. 'Re-wilding', or introducing nature back into cities, is becoming very important.

So, how do you re-wild a town or busy area? One way is to grow flowers and plants in the centre of a city. Singapore has around 150 kilometres of 'Nature Ways', areas of green space and gardens that make it easy for small animals to find food and places to live. And it's easy to do something similar, where you live. Don't worry if you don't have a garden – plants can grow on tall buildings. Look at the Oasis of Aboukir in Paris. And it's not just houses and apartments. In some cities, flowers grow on the top of bus stops!

Another new idea is what happens next to roads or train stations. Usually, plants and flowers here



are cut, especially in the spring and summer. But people can grow flowers and trees here, too. The New York Highline is an old train line that is now a city park. In the summer, it's a beautiful place to take a walk.

Re-wilding is not only about helping animals and making a city look better. When we spend time in nature, we feel more relaxed. Plants also make the air quality better, because trees and flowers make oxygen. Growing plants on buildings makes them warmer in the winter and cooler in the summer, too.

There are many different ways to bring nature back to cities, and all of them are good: for us, for animals and for the environment.

5–6 REVIEW

GRAMMAR

1 A Use the prompts to write regular past simple sentences and questions.

- **1** We / arrive / in Rome at 4 p.m.
- 2 A: / you / study / Italian at school? B: Yes, we / do .
- **3** I / not watch / the news / yesterday.
- 4 When I / be / young, I / play / a lot of football.
- 5 A: / you / start / the meeting early?B: No, we / not. You're late.
- **6** I / try / to learn the guitar last year, but it / be / difficult.
- 7 you / travel / with your family?
- 8 Carole / not listen / to me yesterday.

B Complete the text with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Last year my sister 1 (get) married. On the morning of the wedding, we all ² (wake up) early to help her get ready, but when it was time to leave the house, the car ³ (not be) there! I 4 (ring) the car company, but it ⁵ (not arrive). We ⁶ (not know) what to do. Finally, I 7 (take) her on my motorbike! That niaht we ⁸ (have) a great party and (not leave) until three in the morning. My sister 10 (say) it was the best day of her life!

2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 London is a city big / big city.
- 2 I like your green / greens shorts.
- 3 This band isn't very / quite good.
- 4 My parents live in a big and old / big, old house.
- 5 I like that car, but it's too / too much expensive.
- 6 | feel tired / tired feel after that game.
- 7 That's so much / so kind of you, thank you.
- 8 I like Catherine, she's quite / a bit nice.
- **3** Complete the sentences and questions with the present continuous form of the verbs in the box.

check do have meet play not answer not sit work

- 1 Sorry, Lucy isn't here. She _____ a client at the moment.
- 2 What _____ you ____?
- 3 Graham _____ from home today.
- **4** My parents _____ my messages. I hope they're both OK.
- **5** Can I call you back? I _____ lunch at the moment.
- 6 _____ James _____ football in the park?
- 7 Where's Kazue? She _____ at her desk.
- 8 Give me five minutes. I _____ my emails.

4 A Use the prompts to make comparative sentences and questions.

- 1 Marek / tall / me.
 - Marek is taller than me.
- 2 motorbikes / dangerous / cars.
- **3** children / happy / adults?
- 4 cities / big / towns.
- 5 which / far / from here, / your office / your house?
- 6 the train / comfortable / the bus.
- 7 which / bad, / rain / snow?
- 8 this dress / nice / that dress.
- **B** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets.
 - 1 I'm _____ (old) than my sister.
 - 2 The sofa is _____ (new) than the chair.
 - 3 Is coffee _____ (expensive) than tea?
 - **4** The weather today is _____ (good) than it was yesterday.
 - 5 My town is _____ (safe) than a big city.
 - 6 Which is _____ (difficult), English or Thai?
 - 7 A train is _____ (fast) than a taxi.
 - 8 My mother is _____ (busy) than my father.

5 A 📑 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 When I got out <u>off</u> the car, it started raining.
- **a** into **b** of **c** over
- **2** I walked <u>down</u> the steps, right to the top.
 - a over b into c up
- **3** Go <u>up</u>! I don't want to talk to you at the moment. **a** across **b** away **c** off
- **4** We live near an airport, so planes fly <u>under</u> the house all day.
 - a over **b** across **c** along

B Complete the walking guide with words from the box.

across along down out of over through towards up

Little Hampington: *Walks for visitors (Route B)*

Route B is more difficult than Route A, and takes around four hours. From the village post office, you walk ¹_____ Annesley Road for about two kilometres, ²_____ the forest. When you get to the forest entrance, go ³_____ the gate and into the trees. Walk ⁴_____ the hill to Hunter's Point at the top. Here you can relax and enjoy the view. Go ⁵______ the top of the hill, then walk ⁶_____ the other side to the bottom. Here you come ⁷_____ the forest and walk ⁸_____ the large field, to the end of the walk.

REVIEW 5-6

VOCABULARY

6A Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A: How was your presentation this morning, Tariq?
- B: OK, I think.
- A: Why do you say that?
- B: Well, I stayed up ¹all / for night to finish it, so I was really tired ²later / before the meeting this morning.
- A: Oh no! How long was the meeting?
- B: Well, after I finished my presentation, it continued ³all / for two hours, ⁴from / for 10.30 ⁵to / for 12.30, but it wasn't too bad. We finished at 12.30 and then half an hour ⁶when / later, the clients called to say they want to work with us.
- A: That's brilliant news!

B Choose the correct words to complete the messages.



No, it starts at quarter 6to / before two!

Oh no, I 7had / knew the wrong time!

l can be there for two ⁸**past** / **o'clock**. Let's meet inside the cinema.

OK, see you soon. 😳

7 Set Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 Where did you _____ your best friend?
- a meet b get c become
- 2 I didn't _____ to swim when I was at school.a pass b learn c meet
- **3** Do you think you can _____ your exams this year?
- a get **b** learn **c** pass
- **4** My daughter wants to _____ school this year.
- **a** learn **b** get **c** leave
- 5 We want to _____ married in the spring.
- a get b meet c pass
- 6 When I was at university I decided I wanted to ______a teacher.
 - **a** learn **b** become **c** get

8 Match (1–8) to (a–h) to make sentences.

- 1 I've got a beard and
- 2 Carla has got
- **3** Wear a shirt and
- 4 Sophie is very
- 5 Take your jacket,
- 6 Mike hasn't got any hair,
- 7 I've got straight
- 8 I never wear shoes
- **a** tie for your interview.
- **b** he's bald.
- **c** a moustache.
- **d** with no socks.
- e hair, not curly hair.
- f long, dark hair.
- g tall.
- **h** it's cold outside.
- 9 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are three extra words.

boring by dangerous ferry in on ride safe taxi

- 1 The film was very _____, so I left before the end.
- 2 We should go train, it's easier.
- 3 You need to cross the river by
- 4 Don't worry, travelling by plane is
- **5** You pay when you get _____ the bus.
- 6 Can you _____a scooter?
- 10 Complete the email with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

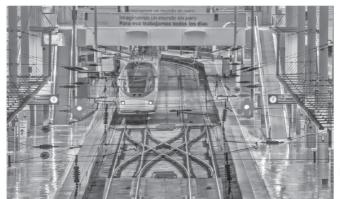
< Inbox

$\wedge \vee$

Dear Aaron

Thank you for booking our apartment for your holiday in Madrid. Here are the directions from the train station.

Come out of the main entrance and walk past the					
¹ car p	until you come to a large				
² S	with lots of cafés. On the other side				
there's a ³ s	of a famous president. Go past				
that. When yo	u come to a ⁴ c, turn left. Walk				
to the ⁵e	of the road, then walk over the				
⁶ p	bridge. Go straight on past the traffic				
7	, and the apartment is on the				
⁸ C	, above a shoe shop.				



Lesson 7A

VOCABULARY

skills and qualities

1 A Match (1–6) to (a–f) to make sentences.

- 1 My daughter is really good with
- 2 I don't like busy offices. I prefer working
- **3** James doesn't mind giving presentations. He's always relaxed in
- **4** Mrs Ryan can never remember
- **5** To be a shop assistant you need to work well
- 6 Do you like working
- **a** animals. She wants to be a vet when she's older.
- **b** outside?
- c alone from home.
- **d** with other people.
- e people's names!
- **f** front of people.

B 📑 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 Every Friday I write / draw / drive a weekly report for our team in India.
- 2 This app can **play** / **draw** / **translate** text from Polish to English.
- 3 Can you type / draw / play a musical instrument?
- 4 Bronwyn can **read / fix / type** very fast. She writes fifty words a minute.
- 5 You can only do this job if you can drive / make / read a lorry.
- 6 Our company plays / designs / writes furniture .
- C Complete the job adverts with the missing words.

Music teacher

We're looking for someone who:

- can ¹ two or three instruments.
- can ²_____ classes from Monday to Friday.
- is ³ in front of other people.

Computer specialist

We need someone who can ⁴

computers, ⁵ reports on computer problems and can ⁶ well with other people.

Fashion designer

- This is an interesting job for someone who
- ⁷_____ clothes and is good with their
- ⁸_____. The job is busy and you need to work
- ⁹_____hours. We are a French company in
- London, so we want someone who can
- ¹⁰_____ from French to English, too.

GRAMMAR

articles: a, an, the, zero

2 A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Can you take me to <u>an</u> airport tomorrow?
 - aa bthe c-
- **2** Maria wants to be <u>a</u> artist.
- athe b– can
- **3** I usually leave <u>the</u> work at 6 p.m.
- a ba can 4 Iwas born in <u>1990s</u>.
- **a** the 1990s **b** a 1990s **c** an 1990s
- B Choose the correct words to complete the email.

5★0

Hi Adiela,

Yesterday I had **1a** / **the** really busy day at **2the** / **-** work. We had **3-** / **a** meeting in **4the** / **-** morning, but I had to finish writing **5-** / **a** report first, so I was late. **6A** / **The** meeting was boring. It was four hours! I don't mind **7-** / **a** meetings, but I hate long ones! I didn't have time to have **8a** / **-** lunch because I had to write **9an** / **-** email to my manager in the afternoon. When the day finished, I went home by **10-** / **the** bus, but **11the** / **a** bus was late, so I only got home **12at -** / **the** eight o'clock.

I hope tomorrow is better!

C Complete the sentences with *a*, *an*, *the* or – (no article).

- 1 _____ bus was late, so I came by _____ taxi.
- 2 Do you like _____ fruit? Would you like _____ pear?
- **3** I sometimes study _____ English late at _____ night.
- 4 We live in _____ city centre, next to _____ main square.

PRONUNCIATION

- **3** A **3 7.01** | weak forms: *a*, *an*, *the* | Listen to the sentences and write what you hear.
 - 1 2 3 4 5 6

B **7.01** | Listen again and pay attention to the weak forms of *a*, *an* and *the*. Then listen again and repeat.

READING

4A Read the article quickly. Match the jobs (a-f) with the paragraphs (1-4). There are two jobs that don't need.

- a delivery driver
- **b** website designer
- house sitter
- **d** online teacher
- e upcycling artist
- f tour guide

B Read the article again and answer the questions.

Which job ...

- 1 pays you well?
- 2 can help to make you healthy?
- **3** gives you a place to live?
- 4 can make you hungry?
- 5 sometimes includes animals?
- 6 involves changing something?
- 7 do you share what you know?
- 8 do you need old objects?
- C Read the article again and choose the correct answers.
 - 1 A house sitter sometimes needs to look after **people / pets / students** .
 - 2 It's a(n) difficult / interesting / dangerous way to make money.
 - 3 Online teaching is a good job if you like working alone / with people / outside.
 - 4 Online teachers can / can't make good money.
 - 5 Upcycling artists need to work outside / with people / with their hands.
 - An upcycling artist makes money by reading / selling / writing things.
 - 7 A delivery driver always works long hours / outside / in a restaurant.
 - 8 Delivery drivers **need** / **don't need** to have some food before they work.

Do you need some extra money? A job you can do in the evenings or at weekends? Here are some unusual ideas you can try.

1

Sometimes, if people on holiday, they want a person to live in their house or flat so they know it's safe. This job is quite easy and it can be long or short – you can stay for many months or one night! It helps if you're good with animals, because people often have a dog, cat or plants for you to look after. It's also fun, because you can live in lots of interesting places.

2

Do you know a lot about a school subject or have an interesting hobby? A lot of people enjoy learning new skills, or need to study more to pass an exam. Maybe you can help them. You need to work well with people and you can't usually work outside, but the money is good.

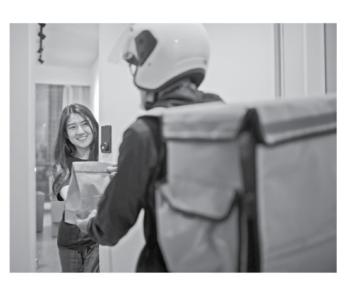
3

In this job, you find old things that people don't want or need (e.g. a broken chair or an old box), fix them and make them look better. This is called 'upcycling'. You can then sell the things online or at a market. It's a great job if you like art and want to change rubbish into something interesting!

4

Restaurants and cafés always need people to deliver their food to hungry customers. You sometimes need to work long hours, but it's a great way to work outside and do exercise at the same time. Always have something to eat before you ride your bike though, or you can be very hungry when you finish!





Lesson 7B

VOCABULARY

phrasal verbs

1 A Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

- 1 Can you
- (off / music / the / turn) please? I'm trying to sleep. 2 We often go out and
- (rubbish / up / pick) as part of a community project. 3 Anika
- (dog / looked / my / after) while I was on holiday. **4** She
 - (her / up / job / gave) to become a piano player.
- 5 Can you please _____ (this / clean / mess / up)?
- 6 Why don't you _____ (up / the information / look) on the internet?
- 7 Can you (my / pick / up / book) for me, please?

B Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Have you got a dictionary? I need to _____ up a word.
- **a** clean **b** give **c** look
- 2 Can you ______ after the children for an hour?
- a look b give c pick
- **3** I need to _____ up the kitchen.
- a pick **b** clean **c** look
- 4 Please _____ off the TV when you go to bed.
- **a** pick **b** give **c** turn
- **5** Helena wants to _____ up her job because she doesn't like her manager.
 - a look b pick c give
- 6 Please _____ up your rubbish when you leave the park.
 - a look b pick c turn

C Choose the correct words to complete the blog post.

New job!

Last month, I 1**gave** / **picked** up my job at the supermarket because I wasn't happy there. I wanted a change and the good news is, I've



got a new job ... in a pet shop! | ²pick / look after cats, dogs, birds, fish and rabbits, ³give / look up information about the animals on the internet and ⁴clean / look up the shop at the end of the day. My favourite animals are the rabbits. You can ⁵pick / give them up in your hands! They're so cute. I love my new job. When I ⁶pick / turn off the lights and close the shop at the end of the day, I can't wait for tomorrow!

GRAMMAR

present simple and present continuous

2 A Match (1–8) to (a–h) to make sentences.

- 1 I work in an office,
- 2 We usually have dinner at home,
- 3 I don't usually drive to work,
- 4 Nadia usually goes to the gym in the evening,
- 5 I don't usually like fish,
- 6 My dad hardly ever cooks,
- 7 Kevin doesn't usually work at the weekend,
- 8 My brother usually goes to parties on Saturday night,
- a but tonight he's making pasta.
- **b** but I'm really enjoying these prawns!
- c but today I'm working from home.
- d but tonight he's staying in.
- e but this morning I'm going by car.
- f but today she's going before breakfast.
- g but this evening we're going to a restaurant.
- **h** but today he's finishing some reports.

B 📑 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 She _____ to work every day by tram.
- **a** is going **b** go **c** goes
- 2 I _____ this text message.
- a don't understandb 'm not understandingc doesn't understand
- 3 What is Charlie _____ upstairs?
- a do **b** does **c** doing
- 4 What _____ you listening to?
- **a** is **b** are **c** do
- 5 Can I call you back? We _____ dinner at the moment.
- **a** 're having **b** have **c** 's having
- **6** I _____ German, but not very well.
- **a** 'm speaking **b** speak **c** 's speaking

C Complete the text with the present simple or present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

11 (no	ot usually work)	at the weekend, but
today is Sunday an	d ²	(help) my sister
with her business.	She ³	(make) T-shirts
and ⁴	(sell) them onli	ne. At the moment
her T-shirts are ver	y popular and l	ots of people
⁵ (buy) them, so we ⁶	(make)
new ones and 7	(send	l) them to
customers. It's har	d work but I ⁸	(like) it
because we spend	time together.	

PRONUNCIATION

- **3A 7.02** | connected speech, the /t/ sound | Listen to the sentences. Do the speakers pronounce the final -t in *doesn't* and *isn't*?
 - 1 She's isn't thinking about anything.
 - 2 It doesn't look good.
 - 3 He isn't driving today.
 - 4 She doesn't like cheese.
 - 5 He isn't speaking to her.
 - 6 It isn't raining today.
 - B 💿 7.02 | Listen again and repeat.

LISTENING

- 4 A You will listen to a podcast about volunteers. Choose the best meaning of a volunteer (a-c).
 - **a** someone who helps other people in their free time
 - **b** someone who works a lot during the week
 - c someone who works outside
 - B **7.03** | Listen to the podcast. Are the sentences about Wesley (W) or Josie (J)?
 - 1 He/She is a teacher.
 - 2 He/She works in an office.
 - **3** He/She is training a sports team today.
 - 4 He/She is working in a garden today.

C **7.03** | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Wesley teaches adults.
- **2** There aren't any vegetables in the garden at the moment.
- **3** Wesley is cleaning up the garden today.
- 4 The work in the garden is easy.
- **5** Josie trains children to play sport.
- 6 She enjoys working in an office.
- 7 The children like football.
- 8 The team has a big game tomorrow.



WRITING

write a blog post; use example language

- 5A Read the blog post. Choose the things it mentions (a-f).
 - **a** art classes
 - **b** books
 - c places to eat
 - **d** parties
 - e picking up rubbish
 - f sports

 \equiv

I think it's important to be part of your local community. That's why I'm in a social media group for people who live in my area. This helps all of us in lots of different ways. For example, if someone moves to the area and wants information on restaurants or to play sport, they can ask local people for ideas. You can buy and sell things on the website, too. We also organise house sitting and community events, like bike rides and book clubs. To give another example, we have street parties where people dance and have fun.

B Complete the sentences with *for*, *give* or *like*.

- 1 We do lots of things to help. _____ example, we give old people tea and coffee on Thursdays.
- **2** We also have events to bring people together, _____football matches.
- **3** To ______ another example, we have a local tennis team.
- C Imagine that you are in a community group for your area. Write a blog post about what your group does. Use the activities in Ex 5A and the language in Ex 5B to help you. Write 80–100 words.
- D Look at the picture. You have 9 minutes to write about the picture. You must write 25-50 words.



 \odot

Lesson 7C

VOCABULARY

phoning

- 1 A Set Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 - 1 The sound is really bad. Can you call me on the moment / second / landline ?
 - 2 Please leave / call / ring a message after the tone.
 - 3 Can you call / hold / wait a moment, please?
 - 4 Can you call Gina landline / mobile / back as soon as possible, please?
 - 5 To ring / delete / phone this message, press three.
 - 6 I need to **phone / delete / send** the bank, but I can't find the number.

B Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

back call deleted double landline minute send smartphone

- 1 Can you hold on a _____? I'm just going inside the house.
- **2** The number is nine _____ four, six eight three.
- **3** Just ______a message to 9813 with the words OFFER21 for more information.
- **4** I left Sean a message but he never called me
- **5** I bought a new _____ because my other one stopped working.
- 6 Please don't _____ me before five because I work until then.
- 7 Can you send me the details again? Sorry, I your last message by mistake.
- 8 I don't have a mobile at the moment, can you call me on my _____?

How to ...

phone for information

2 **Total | Listen to the recording. Choose the words** in the text that are different from what you hear.

Thank you for calling MovMaxx cinemas. Please choose an option. For films and times, press 1. For our prices, press 2. To speak to one of our team, press 9. Alternatively, please read our website at movmaxx. co.uk.

3 A 3 A 7.05 | Listen to Justin calling a cinema. Which of these things does he NOT ask about?

- 1 film times
- 2 types of films
- 3 ticket prices

B 🚺 7.05 | Listen again. Complete the sentences.

- 1 Justin wants to watch a film on
- 2 The cinema is showing the film ______ times.
- **3** The first showing is at _____ p.m.
- **4** The last showing is at _____ p.m.
- 5 Tickets for the first showing are £
- 6 Tickets for the other showings are £
- 7 You can buy tickets on the MovMaxx ______ or at the ticket office.
- 8 You can bring your own _____.

PRONUNCIATION

- 4 A **7.06** | friendly intonation | Listen. Does each speaker sound friendly (F) or unfriendly (U)?
 - 1 I'm phoning to ask about a film.
 - 2 I have another question.
 - **3** Thank you for waiting.
 - 4 What are your opening hours?
 - 5 Can I help you with anything else?
 - 6 No, that's all. Thank you for your help.

B 🚺 7.07 | Listen to the friendly speakers and repeat.

SPEAKING

5 A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

another I'm phoning tell me that's all your help

- A: Hello, this is the leisure centre. How can I help you?
- B: Hi. ¹ to ask about the swimming pool.
- A: What would you like to know?
- B: Could you ² the opening times?
- A: Of course. The swimming pool is open to the public from four to seven.
- B: Great, thanks.
- A: No problem. Can I help you with anything else?
- B: Yes, I have ³ question. How much does it cost to swim there?
- A: It's £5 for adults and £3 for children.
- B: Thank you.
- A: Is there anything else?
- B: No, ⁴_____. Thank you for ⁵_____.
- B 🚺 7.08 | Listen and check.
- C **7.09** You are B in the conversation in Ex 5A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.
- D Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 5B.

Lesson 7D

GRAMMAR

verbs and to infinitive

1 A Match (1–8) to (a–h) to make questions and statements.

- 1 When did you decide
- 2 I'd like to
- 3 I need
- 4 Would you
- 5 I learned
- 6 I'd hate
- 7 Do you
- 8 I'm planning to go
- **a** to call my mum tonight.
- **b** to become a teacher?
- **c** want to go out for dinner?
- d to read and write when I was three.
- e to live somewhere very cold.
- f on holiday twice this year.
- g come and see you later, if that's OK.
- ${\boldsymbol{\mathsf{h}}}$ like to meet for a coffee this afternoon?

B The sentences and questions below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 Would you like <u>come</u> for dinner this weekend?a to comeb comingc come to
- 2 I'm learning <u>driving</u> at the moment.
 - a to driving b drive c to drive
- 3 I'd love see that film tonight.
 - **a** a see **b** to see **c** seeing
- 4 What do you plan doing after you finish university?
 - a to do b do c to doing

C Complete the email with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

decide 'd hate 'd love learn like need plan want

Hi Lucas,

How are you? I'm writing to ask for some advice, if that's OK. I'm looking for a new job. Five years ago I got a job at a bank. I to stay in that job all my life, but I wasn't happy, so I to change jobs two weeks ago. Now, I need to think about what to do next. I'd ³ to work with people. 14 to work alone. I don't like being in an office all day, so I ⁵..... to work outside. Maybe I should become a tour guide. At the moment I to speak Spanish at a language school, but I'm not to practise more. very good. I really 7.... What do you think? I 8 to know your opinion! Please write and tell me. Bye for now! Alexi

LISTENING

2A 10 | Listen to three English students talking about themselves in class. Match the people (1–3) with the jobs (A–C).

1 Ricardo 2 Kura

3 Maria







B 17.10 | Listen again. Write R (Ricardo), K (Kura) or M (Maria).

Who ...

- 1 wants to study photography?
- 2 needs to write in English for work?
- 3 would like to dance more?
- 4 gives presentations in English?
- **5** wants to learn English to get a different job?
- **6** is trying to learn a musical instrument?

C 10 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. Then listen again and check.

- 1 I'm learning English because I to use it in my job.
- 2 I'm trying to learn the piano as a
- **3** It's really important for the of my business!
- **4** I ______ to learn to dance salsa and tango.
- **5** I'd _____ to work as a Spanish teacher.
- 6 I _____ to do a course in that next month.

Lesson 8A

GRAMMAR | superlative adjectives **VOCABULARY** | describing places **PRONUNCIATION** | -*t* in superlatives

VOCABULARY

describing places

- - **a** forest **b** coast **c** ocean
 - 4 Madrid is about 70 km west here. **a** at **b** on **c** of
 - **5** Be careful on those dangerous by the sea.
 - a rocks b forests c oceans
 - 6 Golden Gate park is right _____ the middle of San Francisco.
 - a on **b** in **c** at

B Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

- 1 In the afternoon, we had a l_____ walk in the f_____.
- 2 Oxford is a famous town in the m_____ of England.
- **3** Cabo San Lucas is a popular Mexican holiday city on the Pacific O
- **4** There are lots of p______little shops and cafés in the a_____.
- 5 At the t_____ of the mountain there are some w_____ views across the park.
- 6 Istana Negara in Kuala Lumpur is the N_____ Palace of Malaysia.
- C Choose the correct words to complete the text.

Visit Croatia

Come and visit ¹wonderful / national Croatia. There are lots of great things to



do here. You can relax by the ²**rocks** / **coast** and swim in the Mediterranean Sea. Because it's not an ³**ocean** / **coast**, the water is ⁴**lovely** / **pretty** and warm. Or perhaps visit the Plitvice Lakes ⁵**National** / **Wonderful** Park, which is 130 km south ⁶**for** / **of** the capital, Zagreb. The lakes are in the ⁷**top** / **middle** of a beautiful forest and are very ⁸**national** / **pretty**.

GRAMMAR

superlative adjectives

2 A 📑 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 I'm the most tall person in my family.
 - a tallest b taller c tall
- 2 By bike is <u>best</u> way to travel in my city.
 a better
 b most good
 c the best
- 3 What's the modern part of your city?
 - **a** most modern **b** a modern **c** more modern
- 4 The south of my country is the most dry part.a dryb driestc drier
- **B** Complete the text with the superlative form of the adjectives in the box.

beautiful dry far high large wet

Did you know ... ?

We aren't alone in space. There are eight planets in our solar system. The ¹______ from Earth is Neptune, and it's the only one you can't see at night.

There are seven continents (big parts of land, e.g. Africa, Europe), but the ²_____ is Asia.

You may know that the ³ mountain in the world is in the Himalayas, but did you know that in Europe, it's Mount Elbrus, in Russia, at 4,741 metres?

The Atacama Desert in Chile and Peru is the

⁴_____ place on the planet, where some parts have only 1–3 mm of rain a year.

The ⁵ city in the world is Mawsynram in India. It has over 11,000 mm of rain a year.

If you go to Australia, visit the Whitsunday Islands. Whitehaven beach is the best in the world, but is it the ⁶.....? Where is your favourite beach?

PRONUNCIATION

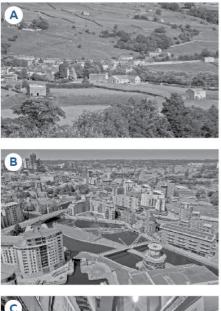
- **3**A **8.01** |-*t* in superlatives | Listen to the sentences. Write the missing words.
 - 1 It's the most _____ place to visit.
 - 2 It's the best ______ to see elephants.
 - 3 It's the driest _____ on the planet.
 - 4 Neptune is the furthest from Earth.
 - 5 It's the smallest
 - 6 The coldest _____ is January.
 - B 8.01 | Listen again. In which sentences can you hear the -t in bold? Listen again and repeat.

READING

4A Read the text. Select a picture to answer the question.

York is a city in the north of England. It has a lot of old buildings and is popular with tourists.

Which picture shows York?





- **B** Read the article. Decide if these things are in York (Y) or outside York (O).
 - 1 the Shambles
 - 2 Scarborough castle
 - 3 Rowntree Park
 - 4 North York Moors
 - 5 the beach
 - 6 Betty's Café Tea Rooms

${\bf C}\,$ Read the article again. Choose the correct options (a–c).

- **1** What can you see from the York City Walls?
 - **a** a castle **b** the city **c** the coast
- 2 Where are the Shambles?
 - **a** in the south of the city **b** in the north of the city
 - **c** in the middle of the city
- **3** How old are some of the buildings in the Shambles?
 - **a** almost 1,000 years old **b** over 1,000 years old
 - c almost 100 years old
- **4** How did they go around the North York Moors?
 - a on foot **b** by car **c** by bus
- **5** What activity does the writer NOT say you can do at Scarborough castle?
 - **a** see the castle **b** go for a walk **c** go swimming

Our holiday in York

My best friend Marta and I and just got back from a holiday in York, a town in the north of England. We visited our friends David and Leyla and had a wonderful time! Here's what we did.

Day 1

On the first day we went to the York City Walls. They are 3.4 km long and go around the old town. From the top you have great views of the streets and the centre. It's the best way to start a visit to the city! Then we rode bikes near the river in Rowntree Park, close to David and Leyla's house.

Day 2

Today we walked around the Shambles. It's a lovely street in the centre of York. Some of the buildings are 800 years old! The buildings are very pretty and there are some lovely little shops and cafés. For me, it's the nicest part of the city. In the afternoon we visited Betty's Café Tea Rooms and relaxed with a cup of English tea. We also tried some of the most delicious cakes in this city!

Day 4

We like walking, and so later in the week the four of us drove to the North York Moors. They're about 40 km north of York, and the views are wonderful. We walked for five hours, but it rained a lot. It was the wettest day of our holiday!



Day 5

On the last day of our holiday, Marta and I went to Scarborough castle. It's about two hours away by bus, and I can really recommend it. For me it's the most beautiful place in the area. The castle is on the coast, so after you visit, you can walk along the beach!

Phew! We had a great time, but now we're home I think we need another holiday just to relax!

Lesson 8B

VOCABULARY

travel activities

1 A Complete the table with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

verb	phrase		
take	¹ p		
² V	famous places		
go on	an organised ³ t		
4L	around the town		
go with	a local ⁵g		
^e u	an app or guidebook		

- B Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 - 1 When I was in Cuba, I **made / took / used** a dance class. It was amazing!
 - 2 My friend Owen always **takes** / **makes** / **looks** a lot of photos when he travels.
 - 3 My favourite thing on holiday is using / trying / doing the local food.
 - **4** When we went to Prague, we **used** / **did** / **took** an app to help us find places in the city.
 - **5** Tomorrow we're **looking** / **going on** / **visiting** an organised tour of the Taj Mahal.
 - 6 When we visited the Amazon, we went with / went on / visited a local guide.

C Complete the text with the words in the box.

around class guide local photos tour



⁵_____ into the forest and saw elephants. While we were there I did a cooking ⁶_____.

I learned how to make Tom Yum Goong, a Thai soup. It was an amazing trip.

GRAMMAR

be going to

2 A Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 Kyra's going _____ a film at the cinema tonight.
- **a** to watch **b** watching **c** watch
- 2 _____ going to talk to Hannah?
- **a** You aren't **b** You are **c** Are you
- **3** I'm _____ go to the bank this afternoon.
- **a** going to **b** go **c** going
- **4** We ______ stay at home tonight.
- **a** not going to **b** aren't going to **c** aren't going
- 5 What _____ do about this?
- **a** are you going to **b** you are going to
 - you aren't going to
- **6** A: Are you going to try the local food in Korea? B: Yes,
 - a l'm going **b** lam **c** ltry
- **B** Complete the sentences with *be going to* and the verbs in the box.

not eat not stay play take visit watch

- 1 This summer we _____ my mum in Scotland.
- 2 What film _____ you _____ at the cinema tonight?
- **3** Tonight I _____ photos of the moon with my new camera.
- 4 I ______ at home tonight, I'm going out.
- **5** ______ Helena _____ football with us at the weekend?
- 6 Chris ______anything. He's not hungry.

C Put the words in brackets in the correct order to complete the conversation.

- A: 1_____ (you / travel / going / are / to) anywhere this summer, Martin?
- B: ² (am / I / yes. I can't wait! ³ (to / visit / going / I'm) Prague, in the Czech Republic.
- A: Nice! 4_____ (with / who / to / going / go / you / are)?
- B: My sister, Isabel. ⁵
 (do / to / we're / going) a walking tour in the old town and try the local food.
- A: Cool. It's beautiful, I went a few years ago. (stay / where / to / you / going /are)?
- B: Well, ⁷ (to / aren't / we / going / stay) in the centre, it's too expensive. We found a cheap hotel outside the city, so ⁸ (get / to / going / we're) a bus into the centre every day.
- A: Sounds wonderful. Have a great time!

PRONUNCIATION

- **3**A **3**A **8.02** | weak form of *to* | Listen to the questions and write what you hear.
 - 1 _____ 2 _____ 3
 - 4
 - 5
 - 6
 - B **8.02** | Listen again and repeat. Pay attention to the weak form of *to*.

LISTENING

4A **3.03** | Listen to Dillon telling his friend Viv about his holiday plans and answer the questions.

- 1 Where is he going?
- 2 How many weeks is he going to stay there?
- B **8.03** | Listen again. Number the activities in the order Dillon mentions them.
 - **a** Dillon and his friend are going on an organised tour.
 - **b** They're not going to do anything.
 - c He's going to try the local food.
 - **d** Karl's going to take a class.
 - e They're going to stay in a hotel in Rio.
 - f They're going to visit another town.
- C **8.03** | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?
 - 1 Dillon and his friend, Karl, are going to stay near Copacabana Beach.
 - 2 People usually eat Feijoada with rice.
 - **3** Dillon and Karl are going on organised tour on the first day.
 - 4 The mountain is called Santa Teresa.
 - **5** Búzios is east of Rio de Janeiro.
 - 6 They want to see the beaches in Búzios.
 - 7 Karl is going to study photography.
 - 8 They are going to be busy when they get back to Rio.



WRITING

write about your plans; use linkers *so* and *because*

5A Read the email about someone's travel plans. Answer the questions.

- 1 Where are they going?
- **2** When are they going to arrive?
- 3 What's the weather going to be like?
- 4 What are they going to try?
- **5** Where are they going to spend a lot of time in Búzios?

< Inbox

Hi Jenny!

This summer I'm going to visit Rio de Janeiro, and I can't wait! We arrive on 3 August and a driver from our hotel is going to meet us at the airport. We're going to stay at the Grande Palace Hotel in Copacabana. August is winter in Brazil, but it's still going to be hot, so we're not going to take any warm clothes, just shorts and T-shirts.

While we're there, we're going on an organised tour to see the most famous places in the city, and we're going to try the local food. We're also going to visit another town, Búzios for four nights, where we're going to spend a lot of time on the beach.

All the best,

Maxi

B Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 It's very cold at that time of year, **so** / **because** bring some warm clothes.
- **2** You need to leave early **so** / **because** the traffic is always bad.
- **3** Don't visit in April **so** / **because** it's the wettest month of the year.
- **4** The hotel is wonderful, **so / because** you might not want to leave!

C You are going to write a description of a future trip (real or imagined) Make notes about these things.

- Where are you going to stay?
- Why are you going to go there?
- Who are you going to go with?
- What are you going to do? (at least three activities)
- **D** Write the description of your trip. Use *because* and *so* at least two times each. Write 80–100 words.

 $\land \land$

Lesson 8C

HOW TO ... | make requests and offers in a hotel VOCABULARY | hotel language; hotel rooms PRONUNCIATION | the contraction '*ll*

VOCABULARY

hotel language; hotel rooms

- 1 A Set Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.
 - 1 I'm travelling alone, so I only need a _____ room.
 - a double b twin c single2 Here's your room key. The password is on the back.
 - a wifi **b** restaurant **c** bath
 - **3** I'm going to drive to the hotel. Is there a ?
 - **a** restaurant **b** car park **c** gift shop
 - 4 I've got a room with a _____, so I can sit outside in the sun.
 - **a** bath **b** balcony **c** swimming pool
 - **5** It's so hot at this time of year. Luckily my room has
 - **a** air conditioning **b** wifi **c** a hairdresser's
 - 6 The _____ is on the second floor, if you want to do exercise while you're here.
 - **a** gift shop **b** double room **c** gym

B Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

air double gift password restaurant shower view

- 1 Does the hotel have a ______ shop? I'd like to buy a present.
- **2** We've got a lovely room with a _____ of the sea.
- 3 What's the wifi _____?
- 4 Let's have dinner in the hotel _____ tonight.

2

- 5 We'd like a large _____ room, please.
- 6 Does the room have a bath or a _____
- **7** The _____ conditioning isn't working. Can you please send someone to fix it?

C Choose the correct words to complete the text.

Last week I travelled to Berlin for an important business meeting. My flight was early in the morning, so I printed my boarding '**pass / ticket** the night before. I also booked an airport '**travel / transfer** to the hotel before I left, because it was cheaper than a taxi. When I arrived, I checked in and took the '**safe** / lift to my room on the fourth floor, then put my passport in the '**box / safe**. I was really hungry, so I ordered room '**food / service** and watched TV for a while. On the day I came back, my flight was at 7 p.m., but I couldn't check out '**early / late**, so at 11 a.m. I paid my '**service / bill**, left my '**sluggage / room** at reception and visited the city centre and the Berlin Wall.

How to ...

make requests and offers in a hotel

- **2** A **3** 8.04 | Listen and match the conversations at a hotel reception (1-4) with the topics (a-d).
 - a the safe c the TV
 - **b** the type of room **d** an airport transfer
 - B **8.04** | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?
 - **Conversation 1:** The woman booked a double room.
 - Conversation 2: The air conditioning isn't working.
 - **Conversation 3:** The woman wants to book an airport transfer for tomorrow.
 - **Conversation 4:** The woman wants to keep her credit card in the safe.

PRONUNCIATION

3A **8.05** | the contraction 'll | Listen to four sentences. Which one does the speaker say (a or b)?

- 1 a I'll send someone up.
- **b** I send someone up.
- **2 a** I'll do that right now. **b**
 - **b** I do that right now.
- **3 a** I'll call room service.
- **4 a** I'll check.
- b I call room service.b I check.
- B 💿 8.06 | Listen and repeat.

SPEAKING

4 A Put the sentences (a–g) in the correct order to complete the conversation.

A: Hello, Reception. You're speaking to Jessie.

- a B: 204. Thank you.
- **b** B: Hello. I'm calling about the air conditioning. How do I turn it on? Can someone help?
- A: Just phone 100 to speak to someone from the restaurant.
- d A: No problem. Can I help you with anything else?
- e B: Yes, please. I'd like to order room service. How do I do that?
- **f** A: Of course. I'll send someone up. Which room is it?
- **g** B: Wonderful. Thank you.
- B 🚺 8.07 | Listen and check.
- C 🔊 8.08 | You are B in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.
- D Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 4B.

Lesson 8D

GRAMMAR | adverbs of manner **READING** | three travel experiences

GRAMMAR

adverbs of manner

- 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
 - 1 You speak English very well / good.
 - 2 He walked away from the meeting **slow** / **slowly**.
 - 3 You look happy / happily today.
 - 4 Please be quiet / quietly, I'm trying to work.
 - 5 Kailey won the tennis match easy / easily.
 - 6 This music is too loud / loudly. I can't work.
 - 7 Be careful / carefully! That coffee is very hot.
 - 8 I had a really bad / badly day yesterday.
 - **9** You're driving **dangerous** / **dangerously**, please slow down.
 - 10 It's too noisy / noisily in here, let's go outside.

2 A Complete the conversation with the adjective or adverb form of the word in brackets

A: How was your weekend?

- B: It was ¹ (brilliant), thanks!
- A: Why? What happened?
- B: I had a basketball game on Sunday and my team won. We played really ² (good).
- A: Cool!
- B: Yes, I was worried before the game because I slept ³ (bad) on Saturday night.
 But we worked really ⁴ (hard) in the game. That's why we won. The other team had one player who was very
 ⁵ (fast), but we stopped him. What

about you? How was your weekend?

A: It was really ⁶ (good). I went mountain biking. My friend cycles ⁷ (dangerous) sometimes, but I'm always ⁸ (careful).

B 🚺 8.09 | Listen and check.



3A Read the article quickly. Match the places (1-3) with the photos (A-C).

B Read the article again. Answer the questions.

On which trip (1–3) can you:

- **a** stay in a place people usually visit quickly?
- **b** travel though a forest?
- c wash in the middle of a city?
- **d** see birds?
- e learn about local life?
- f stay in an unusual building?
- g have a local drink?
- h have a beautiful experience before breakfast?

See the world with new eyes

Would you like to have wonderful travel experiences? Here are three ideas to help you plan your next trip!

1 Watch eagles ride the skies

Come to Ölgii in the west of Mongolia, for the Golden Eagle festival. The festival started in the year 2000 and happens in the first week of October every year. You stay in the mountains with a local family and experience how they live. It's an interesting area of forest and lakes that very few people visit. The people there use eagles to find food in the mountains. They can teach you how to do it, too ... safely, of course!

2 Sleep in the Bolivian desert

The deserts in Salar de Uyuni are white, flat and beautiful. Some people say it feels like the moon! Most people who come here only stay a short time. But with this wonderful experience you can stay overnight in a special hotel. The walls and floors are salt! In the morning, wake up early to see the sun slowly come up over the desert, which was a lake millions of years ago.

3 Take a bath in the city centre

Under the ground in Tbilisi, the capital of Georgia, is natural hot water, so in the middle of the old town you can take a bath! Some of the baths are hundreds of years old. When you arrive, a person gives you soap and a towel. The baths are very hot, so stay in for five minutes, then quickly take a cold shower. Then go back in again! Usually people stay for an hour, then have a cup of Georgian tea. It's an experience you can't forget!



GRAMMAR

1 A Choose the correct words to complete the text.

I love my job. I'm ^{1}a / the tour guide in Barcelona and every day is different. In ² the / - winter it's often guiet, but in ³ the / – July and August it can be crazy! I usually start ⁴ **a** / **an** morning tour in ⁵ **the** / **–** city centre. We go to ⁶ the / - old town and have coffee in ⁷**a** / – traditional café. After that we go to La Rambla, ⁸the / a big street with places to buy ⁹the / – flowers, food and books. The old town is always ¹⁰ **a** / **an** adventure for tourists - they love my tours!



B Complete the sentences with a, an, the or no article (-).

- window? It's cold in here. 1 Can you close
- 2 I try to go running three times week.
- president of your country? 3 Who is
- 4 Harry loves pasta.
- 5 If you're not sure, you could look for the information internet. on
- 6 I saw two phones I liked in shop, but I black phone more. liked

2A Use the prompts to write sentences in the present simple or the present continuous.

- 1 She / not like / English food.
- 2 you / listen / me?
- 3 How many languages / you / speak?
- 4 Who / Jack / speak to? / he / know / her?
- 5 I / usually work / on Mondays / but today / not work.
- 6 We / have dinner together / once / week.

B Put the words in order to make sentences and questions.

- 1 planning / Turkey / to / to / holiday. / on / We're / go
- 2 evening? / What / do / like / you / this / to / would
- 3 this / I / watch / film. / want / to / don't
- 4 to / When / learn / did / drive? / you
- 5 the Bahamas. / I'd / to / visit / love
- 6 my / you / like / Would / party? / come / to / to

- **3** A Use the information and the adjectives in brackets to write superlative sentences.
 - 1 Jade: 1 m 78 cm; Misha: 1 m 62 cm; Ellie: 1 m 70 cm (tall)
 - 2 Laptop 1: £349; Laptop 2: £620; Laptop 3: £1,299 (expensive)
 - 3 Sam's house: 2 km; Tina's house: 7.5 km; Georgio's house: 5 km

(far from here)

4 Delhi: 19 million people; Rome: 3 million people; Santiago: 5.6 million people

(big city)

5 Car 1: 2019; Car 2: 2021; Car 3: 2012

(modern)

6 Café Roma: **; Molly's café: ***; Green Tree café: * (good)

B Match (1-7) with (a-g) to make sentences.

- 1 The hottest month
- 2 I'm the shortest
- **3** My mum cooks the best
- 4 The furthest
- 5 You can have the largest
- 6 August is usually the
- 7 Mario's is the nicest café
- **a** pasta in the world!
- **b** driest month of the year in my country.
- c here is February.
- d in our town.
- e I can run is 10 km.
- f student in our class.
- g piece of cake. It's your birthday!

C Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A: How was the concert last night?
- B: It was ¹good / well. The band played really ²good / well. Why didn't you come?
- A: I don't like ³loud / loudly music very much.
- B: Oh, well, they didn't play very 4loud / loudly. Their music is quite soft and ⁵slow / slowly.
- A: Really? That doesn't sound too ⁶bad / badly. What did you do after the concert?
- B: We went home, but we sang the band's songs on the train. We were ⁷happy / happily! I don't think the other passengers liked it, though. They just wanted to get home ⁸quiet / quietly!

The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 We go to watch a film at the cinema tonight. a We're go **b** We're going c We going
- 2 I'm don't going to visit my sister this weekend. a not **b** doesn't
- c isn't
- **3** What you are going to study at university? a you qo **b** do you go c are you going

c is going

- 4 A: Is Mike going to move house?
 - B: Yes, he moves.
 - a goes b is

58

REVIEW

VOCABULARY

5 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

fix front good hands hours people remember translate

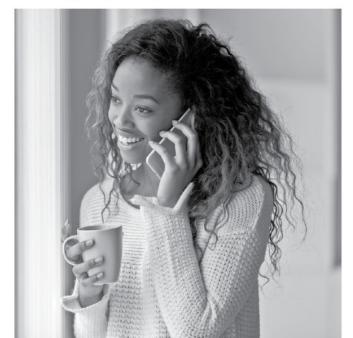
- 1 Carla was always ______ with languages, so it's no surprise she became a translator.
- 2 I hate giving presentations. I don't feel relaxed in ______ of lots of people.
- **3** My sister's a doctor. She loves her job but she works long ______.
- **4** I can _____ from English into Spanish and Italian.
- 5 Can you _____ my computer? It's broken.
- 6 My teacher is really good, but she can never people's names!
- 7 Jamie likes being a mechanic because he loves working with his _____.
- 8 Molly works really well with other _____ in her team.

6 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Can you help me look **up** / **after** some information online?
- 2 Last year I finally gave off / up my job and became a writer.
- **3** My brother looked **up** / **after** our cat when we were on holiday.
- 4 Look at this mess! Pick off / up your rubbish, please.
- 5 Something's wrong with my computer. I can't turn it off / after.
- 6 I love having parties, but I hate cleaning off / up the next day!

7 Choose the odd one out in each group of words.

- 1 call / leave / ring / phone
- 2 099 / oh double nine / zero double nine / oh nine oh
- 3 read / leave / send / mobile
- 4 landline / moment / mobile / smartphone
- 5 back / second / minute / moment
- 6 ring / call / phone / call back



8 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 I never use a _____ when I travel. I like finding things myself.
- a classb local foodc guidebook2 The view at the of the mountain is
- wonderful. **a** top **b** area **c** middle
- 3 We love taking ______ when we visit new places.
- a local food b photos c famous places4 Antalya is a lovely city on the of
- Turkey. **a** rocks **b** forest **c** coast **5** Tomorrow we're going an organised
- a in b on c with
 6 Where's the best place to the local
- food? a use b try c look

9 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

check luggage pool print transfer view

- B: I've got them here. How are we going to get to the hotel? Did you book an airport ².....?
- A: No, I didn't, but it's easy to get a taxi there. The only thing is, we're going to arrive early, but we can't ³ in until 3 p.m.
- B: That's OK. We can leave our ⁴ _____ at reception, then visit the town for a few hours.
- A: Good idea. Has the hotel got a swimming 5_____?
- B: Yes, it has. And we also have a room with a ⁶_____ of the sea!
- A: Really? Amazing! I can't wait to get there!

10 Match (1-7) with (a-g) to make sentences.

- 1 Would you like a single or
- 2 Would you like a room with
- 3 Is there a gift
- 4 Excuse me, does the hotel have a car
- 5 Is there a swimming
- 6 How do I switch on the air
- 7 Can I have a room with a view
- **a** shop in the hotel?
- **b** double room?
- c pool here?
- **d** conditioning?
- e a balcony?
- f of the sea?
- g park?

GRAMMAR

present simple: I, you, we, they

1 Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.

- A: ¹______ you like your English classes?
- B: Yes, I²!
- A: Great! Why do you ³_____ them?
- B: The students in the class ⁴_____ nice and the lessons ⁵_____ fun. We speak to each other in English and ⁶_____ to podcasts. Do you like your French classes?

possessive 's, s'

2 Complete the text with six apostrophes, four for possession and two for contractions.

I have two sisters. My sisters names are Kate and Vicky. Kates house is near mine, but Vicky lives in Spain with her husband and two sons. The boys names are Mateo and Diego. Vickys an English teacher and her husbands a doctor. Kate works in her friends café.

adverbs and phrases of frequency

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 ever / lunch / We / for / hardly / meet .
- 2 twice / I / running / go / week / a.
- **3** is / work / James / sometimes / for / late .
- 4 shopping / Saturdays / We / on / go .
- 5 at / I / work / usually / the / don't / weekend .
- 6 is / Our / friendly / always / teacher .
- 7 gets / My / never / early / brother / up .
- 8 emails / an / hour / I / my / three / check / times .

this, that, these, those; here, there

4 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Try this / these cheese it's very nice.
- 2 Can you give me these / those dirty cups over there?
- 3 Let's meet at the café in Rosalind Road I can be
- here / there soon.
- 4 What's that / those on your T-shirt?
- 5 Are these / those your keys here on the table?
- 6 Come here / there I want to show you something.

there is, there are

5 Complete the text with *is*, *isn't*, *are* or *aren't*.

I live in a big city, but there ¹_____ a park near my house, so there ²_____ much noise. There ³_____ a lot of traffic in the morning because there ⁴_____ a school in our street, but it's quiet at night. There ⁵_____ some nice cafés and restaurants in the city, but there ⁶_____ many good shops. That's OK because there ⁷_____ a station near my house and there ⁸_____ lots of buses.

have got

6 Complete the conversation with the correct form of *have got*.

Kim:	1	you	a car, Anna?
Anna:	No, I ²	, but I ³	a bike.
Kim:	4	your sister	a car?
Anna:	Yes, she ⁵	. I sor	netimes use it.

Kim: Great. Can you drive me into town? I need to see the doctor and I ⁶ a car.

past simple of be: was, were

7 Choose the correct words to complete the text.

Ten years ago, I ¹**am** / **was** in Madrid for a year to study Spanish at university. The classes ²**wasn't** / **weren't** in English. They ³**was** / **were** all in Spanish. But it ⁴**wasn't** / **weren't** difficult for me. The teachers ⁵**was** / **were** good and the other students ⁶**was** / **were** very friendly, too.

How to ...

8 Complete the conversations with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

... make suggestions

A: I'm bored. ¹ Wy	ou like to see a film?
-------------------------------	------------------------

- B: I'd ²l to. How ³a this afternoon?
- A: Sorry, I'm ⁴b_____ then. ⁵C_____ we meet at half past seven this evening?
- B: Sure, that's ⁶f_____. See you then.

... order a meal in a restaurant

A: Are you ready to order?

- B: Yes. Can I ⁷h______ some vegetable soup, please?
- A: Yes, and what ⁸w_____ you like for the main course?
- B: I'd ⁹l_____ the chicken with rice and vegetables.

... make invitations and offers

- A: Would you like to come for dinner on Friday?
- B: I'm ¹⁰s_____, I can't. I'm busy on that day.
- A: ¹¹H_____ about Saturday then?
- B: I'd love to, thank you.

... get help in shops

- A: Good morning, Do you ¹²s_____ batteries?
- B: Yes, we have two types.
- A: How ¹³m are those?
- B: Three pounds fifty.
- A: OK, I'll ¹⁴t_____ them. Can I ¹⁵p_____ by card?

VOCABULARY

jobs and studies

9 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

assistant designer driver officer player student

- 1 I think that police _____ wants to talk to us.
- **3** My friend is a digital _____. He works online.
- **4** Can you ask the bus _____ to stop here?
- **5** The shop ______ in the supermarket was very nice.

common verb phrases

10 Choose the correct words to complete the blog post.

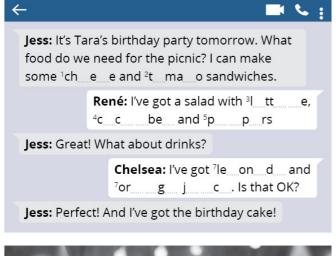
 \odot

Hi everyone, I'm really happy to start this course with you all. Here's some information about me. I'm Luca and I '**live / have** with my brother Bruno in London. I '**live / work** from home, so I don't '**3go / get up** early! Bruno **4teaches / goes** at a school in the city centre, and we **5go / get** out a lot together in the evenings. I also **6work / study** Japanese on Wednesdays. I '**teach / go** to a class at university. At the weekend, Bruno and I usually **8have / play** tennis together.

What about you?

food and drink

11 Complete the messages with one word in each gap. Some letters are given.





restaurant words

12 Choose the correct words to complete the restaurant review.

Il Fiore is a new Italian restaurant in the centre of town. It's perfect for a special '**dinner for two** / **service charge**. They have good '**starters** / **waiters**, including their famous bruschetta (bread with tomatoes). For the '**dessert** / **main course**, I recommend the chicken pasta. It's delicious! The '**starters** / **side dishes** are OK – green salad or vegetables – but they aren't very interesting. My favourite '**dessert** / **main course** is the chocolate and lemon cake. The '**bills** / **waiters** are very friendly, but remember that there is a 20% '**service charge** / **waiter** here, so the '**side dishes** / **bill** can be expensive!

common adjectives (1)

- **13** Choose the correct word (a–c) to complete the sentences.
 - 1 This exercise is _____. Can you help me? a easy b difficult c loud
 - **2** I can't work. There are lots of people and it's _____.
 - **a** loud **b** large **c** long
 - **3** I love this coat. It's so _____ and comfortable. **a** soft **b** small **c** easy
 - **4** Oh no, we've got the _____ birthday present for Karl!
 - **a** different **b** long **c** same
 - 5 I can't eat any more. That was a _____ meal!a hard b large c short
 - **6** This sofa is very _____. It's not comfortable to sit on.
 - a long **b** difficult **c** hard

shops and shopping

14 Choose the correct words to complete the conversations.

- 1 A: Where can I buy magazines near here?
 - B: There's a **newsagent's** / **baker's** at the end of this road.
- 2 A: I need to go to the **greengrocer's** / **pharmacy** for some medicine.
 - B: There's one near here, but it's closed today. There's another one in the supermarket / café.
- **3** A: Where did you get that T-shirt?
 - B: From the new **hairdresser's** / **sports shop** in town. Do you know it?
- 4 A: Do you want to come to the **bookshop** / dry cleaner's with me? I need to get my dress.
 - B: OK, but only if you buy me lunch at the café / sports shop!

GRAMMAR

past simple: regular verbs

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

not arrive cook laugh not post stop study travel not watch

- 1 Last summer, Harry and his friend around Europe by train.
- 2 I _____ German at school, but I can't remember much now!
- **3** Owen _____ any photos of the party on social media.
- **4** We _____ the meeting because there was a loud noise outside.
- 5 We _____ on time. We were late.
- 6 I _____ TV yesterday. I was out all day.
- 7 That film was really funny. We ______ a lot!
- 8 My friend _____ me Japanese food on Monday. It was delicious.

present continuous

2 Complete the conversation with the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

A: Hey, nice photo!

- B: This one? It's me with the people from my office on Thursday afternoon. We ¹ (not work). We're in the park for Yuki's birthday. We ² (wear) shorts and T-shirts because it was a hot day.
- A: Is that you? What ³ you (do)?
- B: I⁴ (laugh) because my friend Janet ⁵ (tell) me a funny story.
- A: Who's the man with the mobile phone?
- B: That's Fitch. He ⁶ (write) an email, I think.
- A: It looks like a nice day. 7_____ that girl _____(play) a guitar?
- B: Yes, she is. That's Crystal. But she ⁸ (not sing). She can't sing!

comparative adjectives

- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences and questions.
 - 1 my / I'm / mum / than / taller .
 - 2 comfortable / The sofa / more / the chair / is / than .
 - 3 more / tea / Which / expensive, / is / coffee or ?
 - 4 today / weather / yesterday / is / than / worse / The .
 - **5** safer / My town / a big city / than / is .
 - 6 or your / my / house / house / Which / further, / is ?
 - 7 quicker / a bicycle / A train / than / is .
 - 8 Which / difficult, / English or / is / Thai / more ?

articles: a, an, the, zero

Complete the job advertisement with *a*, *an*, *the* or – (no article).

Dog walkers needed

We are ¹_____ dog walking company in ²_____ Manchester. We are looking for someone to work for us for two hours ³_____ day, from Monday to Friday.

We need someone who:

- works well with ⁴ people (and dogs)
- · likes working outside.
- ⁵ job starts ⁶ next month.

If you are interested in this job, please send us ⁷_____ email.

verbs and to infinitive

- 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets.
 - 1 Fiona is planning _____ (watch) a film tonight.
 - 2 I'd love (visit) Italy.
 - 3 Would you like _____ (meet) tomorrow?
 - 4 I need _____ (sleep) more.
 - 5 Chris is learning (play) the piano.
 - 6 I would hate _____ (be) a dentist.

be going to

6 Complete the email with *be going to* and the verbs in brackets.

 $\wedge \vee$

< Inbox

Hi Marek

I have lots of plans for your trip. We ² (stay)

at home for the first day so you can relax and meet

my family. Then, the next day, we ³ (go) to

Cambridge. It's a beautiful town with lots of museums. I

⁴ (not drive) there because it's easy to travel by train. I want you to meet my friends Mina and Sam, too. They ⁵ (have) a big party in August, so I hope it's

(not be) after your visit!

Write to me soon so we can make more plans! Craig

adverbs of manner

7 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 My dad doesn't drive very good / well.
- 2 The children are playing **quiet / quietly** in the garden.
- 3 You're very fast speaking / speaking very fast.
- 4 Misha plays the piano **beautiful** / **beautifully**.
- 5 I'm busy / busily at the moment.
- 6 It's really loud / loudly in here. Let's talk outside.

VOCABULARY

life events

8 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box.

become get learn leave meet pass

- 1 When did you decide to _____ married?
- 2 | hope I _____ my exams so I can go to university.
- **3** My daughter wants to _____ a teacher.
- 4 Did you _____ your best friend at school?
- 5 Anna wants to _____ a new job.
- 6 I didn't _____ to swim when I was a child.

clothes and appearance

9 Complete the descriptions with the words in the box.

beard coat hair jeans shorts straight tall





April is tall and she's got long, ⁵_____hair. She usually wears ⁶_____ and a jumper. Today she's also wearing a ⁷_____ because it's cold.

phrasal verbs

10 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 Don't forget to **take / turn** off the lights.
- 2 Anton wants to get / give up his job.
- 3 What a party! Can you help me clean on / up?
- 4 Can you look after / about my dog for me?
- 5 Let's get / pick up the rubbish.
- 6 I need to look / see up some information on the internet.

common adjectives (2)

11 Match the words (1–8) with the opposite words in the box.

	boring cheap difficult long quiet safe slow uncomfortable
1	fast
2	dangerous
3	comfortable
4	noisy
	short
	expensive
_	

- 7 easy
- 8 interesting

hotel language; hotel rooms

12 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'd like to **book** / **plan** a double room for three nights.
- 2 Can I have a room with a look / view of the sea?
- **3** So you have a room **on** / **with** a balcony?
- 4 Can I also book an airport transport / transfer?
- **5** I'd like to **book** / **check** out, please.
- 6 Can we leave / stay our luggage here until later?
- 7 Can we print our boarding passes / tickets?
- 8 I would like to **buy** / **pay** by card, please.

How to ...

13 Complete the conversations with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

... apologise and make excuses

- A: I'm really ¹s_____ I'm late.

... give directions

- A: Excuse me, could you tell me the ³w_____ to the station?
- B: Of course. Walk to the ⁴e_____ of this road, then turn left. The station is in ⁵f_____.

... phone for information

- A: Good morning, I'm calling to ask ⁶a______ tickets for the new exhibition. How much are they, please?
- B: They're £15 for adults and £8 for children.
- A: Thanks. I have ⁷a_____ question. Could you tell me the closing times?
- B: We close at 5.30 p.m. Can I help you with ⁸a_____ else?
- A: No, that's all, thank you.

... make requests and offers in a hotel

- B: Reception. How can I help?
- A: Hi, the TV isn't working in my room. Can you ⁹g_____ me another room?
- B: I'm ¹⁰a_____ that's not possible at the moment, we're full. I'll ¹¹s_____ someone up to look at your TV.

GRAMMAR

present simple: he, she it

- 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
 - 1 My brother live / lives in London.
 - 2 Do / Does Anne teach at a university?
 - 3 Lakisha isn't / doesn't from India.
 - 4 Why does Andy like / likes cold weather?
 - 5 A: Do / Does Maria speak French?
 - B: No, she don't / doesn't.
 - 6 My friend finish / finishes work at five.
 - 7 My dad doesn't **have** / **has** a mobile phone.
 - 8 Where do / does Ben live?

countable and uncountable nouns; *a*, *an*, *some*, *any*

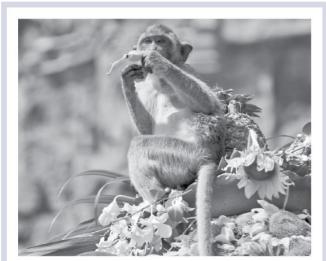
2 Complete the message with one word in each gap.

Leo, can you go to the supermarket on the way home? We need 1______things for the party tomorrow. Can you get 2______melon, 3_____apple and one or two oranges for the fruit salad? We don't need 4_____strawberries because we've got 5______lot of them! Also, can you get 6_____sparkling water? Two bottles, please.

like, hate, love + -ing

 \leftarrow

3 Correct five mistakes with verb + -ing in the article.



If you visit Thailand and like watch animals, it's a good idea to visit the city of Lopburi for the monkey festival. Lopburi is three hours from Bangkok and lots of monkeys live there. They love play in the street and hate be quiet! During the festival, people like give the monkeys fruit and vegetables. They love eat them, but sometimes they also throw food at people! It's fun!

there is, there are

- 4 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.
 - 1 There aren't **a** / **any** / **some** restaurants in the village.
 - 2 There are / aren't / is a lot of noise here at night.
 - 3 There's a / many / some big park near here.
 - 4 Are / Aren't / Is there much traffic in the morning?
 - 5 There isn't a / much / some nightlife in my town.
 - 6 Are / Is / Isn't there any shops where you live?
 - 7 There are / is / isn't lots of open spaces round here.
 - 8 There are / aren't / isn't a train station where I live.

how much, how many; how + adjective

- **5** Complete the questions with one word in each gap.
 - 1 A: How _____ is your son now?
 - B: He's already one metre fifty centimetres!
 - 2 A: How _____ tea do you drink?B: About three cups a day.
 - **3** A: How is Paul?
 - B: He's twenty-one.
 - 4 A: How ______ is your university from here?B: About 10 kilometres. I go there by bus.
 - 5 A: How _____ brothers have you got?B: Just one. His name's Simon.
 - **6** A: How ______ is your train journey? B: One hour. I'll arrive at 6 p.m.

should, shouldn't

6 Complete the article with *should* or *shouldn't* and the verbs in brackets.

 $\leftrightarrow \rightarrow c$

•••

Beautiful Patagonia is in the South American countries of Argentina and Chile. It's a wonderful place to visit! You 1 (travel) to the area during October and November, which is spring in this part of the world. You 2 (go) in the winter because it's very cold. You 3 (bring) warm clothes, so that you can sleep outside and watch the stars. Also, you 4 (wear) a hat in the day, because even when it's cold the sun is strong.

You ⁵ only (travel) by car in Patagonia. If you travel by boat you can see dolphins! You ⁶ (go) to the mountains, too, because it's beautiful there.



CUMULATIVE REVIEW

imperatives

7 Choose the correct words to complete the class rules.

Class rules

- ¹Be always / Always be kind to other students.
- ²**Please ask / Ask please** questions when you don't understand.
- Please ³not / don't be late to class.
- 4No / Never copy other students' work.
- Don't **⁵bring / to bring** food into class.
- ⁶Have / To have fun!

past simple: irregular verbs; wh- questions

- 8 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
 - 1 I _____ (have) my driving test last week.
 - **2** Lisa _____ (meet) her best friend at university.
 - 3 My friend _____ (tell) me a secret yesterday
 - 4 I (wake) up at 5 a.m. today.
 - 5 Someone (ring) me just now, but I don't know who it was.
 - 6 I felt bad because I _____ (not know) the man's name.

adjectives and modifiers

9 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 look / Those / glasses / great .
- 2 really / This / is / busy / café .
- 3 any / got / you / tea / Have / green ?
- 4 a / I / interesting / watched / very / yesterday / film .
- 5 too / That / expensive / is / restaurant .
- 6 lesson / a / boring / Tuesday's / was / bit .
- 7 journey / Did / have / a / you / good ?
- 8 loud / here / It's / in / so !

prepositions and adverbs of movement

10 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

along away in over past up

- 1 Hurry up and get _____ the car. We're late!
- 2 Walk _____ this road for about 300 metres, then turn left.
- **3** I can't ride my bike _____ this hill, it's too difficult. I need to walk.
- **4** He just walked _____ me and didn't even say hello.
- **5** We can walk _____ the bridge to get to the other side of the river.
- 6 Go _____. I don't want to talk to you right now.

articles: a, an, the, zero

11 Complete the sentences with *a*, *an*, *the* or – (no article).

- 1 Can you open _____window? It's hot in here.
- 2 I go to the cinema once _____ week.
- 3 What is _____ capital of your country?
- 4 Julia loves _____ football.
- **5** I spend a lot of time on _____ internet.
- 6 There were two bags in ______ shop, but I bought ______ cheapest one.
- 7 _____ train was late, so I came by _____ bus.
- 8 Do you like _____ fruit? Would you like _____ orange or _____ banana?
- 9 I like working at _____ night.
- 10 I live in _____ city centre, next to _____ park.

superlative adjectives

- 12 Match the sentence beginnings (1-8) with the endings (a-h).
 - 1 The coldest part
 - 2 I'm the tallest
 - 3 My dad knows the best
 - 4 Dr Willis is the most important
 - 5 The longest
 - 6 This is the most expensive
 - 7 June is usually the
 - 8 Leonardo's is the best restaurant
 - a jokes in the world!
 - **b** wettest month in my country.
 - **c** of my country is the north.
 - **d** in the city.
 - e character in the book.
 - f film I have watched was three hours.
 - g person in my family.
 - **h** laptop in the shop. It's £2,000.

comparative adjectives

13 Complete the text with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

Last week, I bought an electric bike. Before that, I travelled to work by bus, which is sometimes (slow) than a bike because there is a lot of traffic. But going by bike is ² (fast) than walking and my journey is always ³ (interesting) and 4 (easy) than taking a bus. Now I can go cycle through the park, too, which is (beautiful) than 5 (quiet) and ⁶ the roads. I love it! It's ⁷ (good) for the environment and of course, it's ⁸ (cheap) than paying for public transport!

VOCABULARY

adjectives for feelings

1 Complete the sentences with the adjectives in the box.

angry bored hungry ill tired thirsty

- 1 I'm _____. Do you want to have dinner?
- 2 I'm sorry about yesterday. Are you still _____ with me?
- 3 We haven't got any water and I'm
- 4 I can't come to work today, I'm _____ with a sore throat.
- **5** I'm _____ and I need to sleep now.
- 6 Sofia is _____. She's got nothing to do.

everyday activities

- 2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
 - 1 I need to **go to / go** a meeting now. Can we talk later?
 - 2 Do you always **check / spend** time with your family at the weekend?
 - 3 I need to go / get shopping for some new clothes.
 - 4 Let's get up / meet mum for coffee soon.
 - **5** Can I use your computer to **meet** / **check** my emails?
 - 6 I need to get / go up early tomorrow.

rooms and furniture

3 Complete the advertisement with the words in the box.

armchair bedroom counter cupboards garage living oven shower upstairs

house is perfect for a city break Our four-1 with friends. In the kitchen there is a large where you can prepare food, and a modern ³ to cook with. There are also lots . The of plates and cups in the 4 room is light and there are two sofas and an ⁶ where you can relax and watch TV. 7 , there are three large and one small bedroom, all with a large wardrobe to keep your clothes in. There are two bathrooms, both with a modern ⁸ . The house also has a to park your car.

time phrases (1)

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

2003						
- ft - u			+		yesterday	
aller	ado	In	lasi	OD	vesterdav	
areer	ago		10000	011	jesteraaj	

- 1 I was in California _____ the summer. It was very hot!
- 2 Let's speak about this _____ the break.
- **3** My birthday is _____ June 14th.
- 4 Were you at home _____ night?
- 5 Our last holiday was two years
- 6 Carol wasn't in class ______ afternoon.

family

5 Choose the correct words to complete the forum posts.

I have a large family. I've got five '**brothers** / **mothers** and sisters! A nd you? Do you have a large or small family? Do you see them a lot?

Comments

Zaina: I haven't got any brothers or sisters, but I've got three ²sons / cousins and we're good friends. Two are my father's ³uncles / nephews and one is my aunt's ⁴wife / daughter.

- Wei: I've got two ⁵uncles / aunts. They're my dad's brothers. I like them a lot, but I don't see them much.
- **Darius:** My daughter and her **father** / **husband** have a baby **brother** / **son**. He's my first **grandfather** / **grandson**!

social phrases

6

Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.
A: Hi Rob! Great to ¹ you!
B: You ²
A: Really good, thanks. Come in.
B: ³ I'm late, the traffic is terrible.
A: 4 problem. Let me take your coat.
B: Thank you. These are ⁵you.
A: Flowers! How nice ⁶ you!
(One hour later.)
B: That ⁷ delicious!
A: I'm ⁸ you liked it!
B: Oh well, time to go. Work tomorrow!
A: ⁹ a safe journey home.
B: Thanks. And thank you ¹⁰ the lovely evening.

CUMULATIVE REVIEW

weather and seasons

7 Complete the definitions with the words in the box.

rainy spring snowing summer sunny warm

- 1 the season after winter:
- 2 when the sky is blue, it's:
- 3 not very hot:
- 4 when the weather is wet:
- 5 when the weather is very cold:
- 6 the season before autumn:

excuses

...

8 Complete the excuses on the website with the words in the box.

mood	down	includ	ill	left
missed	prob	lem	was	

→ ď

Common excuses

We asked you to send us common excuses you hear at work. Here are the results.

Being late to work or a meeting ...

- 1 'I _____ my train.'
- 2 'My bus late.'
- 3 'I didn't _____ my alarm.'
- 4 'I the wrong time.'

Not coming to work ...

- 6 'There was a _____ with my car.'

Not finishing your work ...

- 7 'I my bag in a taxi.'
- 8 'My wifi was .

transport collocations

9 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I usually **drive / ride** my bike to work if the weather is good.
- 2 This is where you buy your ticket and get **at** / **on** the hovercraft.
- 3 Let's leave / take a train into town so we don't have to drive.
- 4 If we go to the cinema **by** / **in** car, we can leave a bit later.
- 5 You can't get from / out of the van here. The road is too busy.
- 6 Can you get off / out your motorbike please, sir.
- 7 It's a nice day. We can walk around the city on **foot** / **walk**.

skills and qualities

10 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

alone	drive	fix	front	good	hands	long
1 Do yo compu	u know uter? It':			o can	rr	ıy

- **2** My nephew's very _____ with animals. I think he should work in a zoo.
- 3 My new job is great, but I work _____ hours.
- 4 We need someone who can_____ a lorry.
- **5** I hate giving presentations. I don't feel relaxed in ______ of lots of people.

travel activities

11 Choose the correct words to complete the email.

Dear Jon,

Thank you for booking your holiday to Bali with us. Here are the details of your trip.

You arrive on 23 April in Denpasar Airport. From there you go **1with / on** a local guide by car to your hotel in Nusa Dua. The next day you can **2visit / look** around the area and **3take / do** some photos of the beautiful coast. On the 25th, you're going to go **4with / on** an organised tour of Ubud. This town is famous for its food, so we suggest you **5try / do** the local dishes. You can even **6use / do** a cooking class while you're there.

On your trip you can ⁷**use** / **do** our 'Visit Bali' app, which gives you all the information you need when you ⁸**go** / **visit** famous places on the island.

Have a great time!

Nyoman

hotel rooms

12 Complete the hotel description with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

Hotel facilities

- There is free ¹w everywhere in the hotel, so you can go online at any time.
- We have a large car ²p_____ if you are driving here.
- We have ³a conditioning in every room to keep you cool on hot days.
- Every bathroom has a ⁴s_____ and a bath.
- If you want to exercise, you can visit the ⁵g_____ on the first floor.
- After a long day, why not relax in our ⁶s_____?
- We have two different ⁷r with lots of options for breakfast, lunch and dinner.
- Before you leave, visit the ⁸g shop and buy something for your friends and family at home.

AUDIOSCRIPTS

UNIT 1

Audio 1.01

- 1 How do you know Sarah?
- **2** Do you <u>like</u> your job?
- 3 Do you work with Paul?
- 4 Where do you <u>live</u>?
- 5 What do you do?
- 6 Do you <u>come</u> from Poland?

Audio 1.02

- Ashley: Hi Scott. How are things?
- Scott: Good, thanks. How are you?
- Ashley: Not too bad. And you?
- Scott: Fine, thanks. Do you know Eliana?
- Ashley: No, I don't.
- Scott: OK, well Ashley, this is Eliana. Eliana, this is Ashley.
- Eliana: Nice to meet you, Ashley.
- Ashley: Nice to meet you, too. How do you know Scott?
- Eliana: We work together.
- Ashley: Oh, really?
- Eliana: And you? How do you know each other?
- Ashley: Oh, we're old friends.
- Eliana: Great!
- Ashley: Where are you from, Eliana? Are you from the USA?
- Eliana: No, I'm not. I'm from Canada.
- Ashley: Oh, sorry.
- Eliana: That's OK.
- Ashley: Do you live here?
- Eliana: No, I don't. I'm here for a meeting with my manager. What do you do, Ashley?
- Ashley: I'm a nurse.
- Eliana: That's nice.
- Ashley: Yes, it is. I like my job.
- Scott: Good to see you, Ashley. Sorry, but we need to go and meet my sister now.
- Ashley: No problem. Nice to meet you, Eliana. Enjoy your time here! Eliana: Thank you!

Audio 1.03

- 1 studies
- 2 sits
- 3 works
- 4 stays
- 5 does
- 6 finishes
- 7 goes
- 8 stops
- 9 watches
- 10 lives

Audio 1.04

- Fran: Hello?
- Mike: Hi, Fran. How are things?
- Fran: I'm all right, thanks. I'm a bit tired today. How are you, Mike?
- Mike: I'm hungry. Would you like to have lunch somewhere?
- Fran: Sorry, I can't. I have a class at twelve.
- Mike: OK. How about after your class?
- Fran: Perfect! Let's have lunch then.
- Mike: OK. What time do you finish?

Fran: One thirty. Can we meet at the café on East Street? Mike: Good idea. I love that place. Can we meet at two? Fran: Sure. See you then. Mike: OK, bye.

Audio 1.05

- 1 Can we do something this evening?
- 2 What would you like to do?
- 3 Let's meet at the cinema.

Audio 1.06 and 1.07

- 1 Sure!
- 2 Good idea.
- 3 I'd love to!
- 4 Perfect!
- 5 Sure, that's fine.
- 6 OK.

Audio 1.08 and 1.09

- A: Hi!
- B: Hello, how are things?
- A: I'm bored. How about you?
- B: I'm all right. Would you like to have dinner?
- A: Good idea. How about meeting at 5 o'clock?
- B: Sorry, I can't. What about 6.30?
- A: Sure. Can we meet at the restaurant?
- B: OK.
- A: Perfect! See you then.
- B: See you then. Bye.

Audio 1.10

- Presenter: Hello and welcome to the family podcast. With me today are Grace and Marco. Grace, tell us about yourself.
 - Grace: Hi, I'm Grace. I'm from Scotland, but I live in Birmingham, in England. I'm a digital designer.
- Presenter: Thanks, Grace. Marco? How about you?

Marco: Hi, I'm Marco. I'm originally from New York in the USA, but I live in London. I'm a pilot, but I'm unemployed at the moment.

- Presenter: Thank you both. Grace, tell us about your family. Grace: Well, I have a small family. My parents' names are Sally and Alan. I don't have any brothers and sisters. I work in a large company with my husband. His name's Deepak. We have a daughter called Leila and she's eight years old. We also have a dog called Lucky.
- Presenter: That's nice! Marco, tell us about your family.
 - Marco: Well, I have two sisters and a brother. My sisters' names are April and Emma. My brother's name is Zach. I live with my wife and our two sons. My wife is called Veronika and our sons' names are Jay and Oliver.
- Presenter: Wow, that's a lot of people! Now, tell us about ...

AUDIOSCRIPTS

UNIT 2

Audio 2.01

- Louise: Hi Carl. Are you at the supermarket? Carl: Yes, I am.
- Louise: Great. Can you get some bread? We don't have any.
 - Carl: Sure. Just that?
- Louise: Yes. Oh, wait. Can you also buy some chillies, please?
 - Carl: OK ... chillies. Ahh. They don't have any fish, so we can't eat that tonight. But they have a lot of prawns. Do you want any?
- Louise: Yes. Good idea. Can you buy some rice, too? And maybe a melon, to eat after dinner?
 - Carl: Sure. See you soon.

Audio 2.02

- 1 Would you like some cheese?
- 2 Can I have an orange, please?
- **3** I'd like a melon.
- 4 Let's buy some mushrooms.
- 5 I don't want an egg.
- 6 We need some oil.
- 7 Would you like some lemonade?
- 8 Can you buy a cucumber and an avocado?

Audio 2.03

- Jess: Don't forget, Theo and Yuki and their son Jake are here for dinner tomorrow night.
- Ben: Oh yes! I need to go shopping. What do you want to cook?
- Jess: Well, Theo loves meat, so we could buy some lamb, or chicken.
- Ben: Do they all like it?
- Jess: Hmm. Actually, no. I forgot that Yuki doesn't eat meat. But she eats fish. So we can cook that.
- Ben: OK. Let's get some prawns. They sell really nice ones at the market. You can make a salad to go with it.
- Jess: Good idea, she really likes prawns. Oh, and Jake eats a lot of vegetables, so you can buy broccoli or carrots as well.
- Ben: Vegetables? How old is he?
- Jess: He's ten. I know, it's funny, isn't it? Oh, can you buy something for dessert, too?
- Ben: How about some ice cream?
- Jess: Yes, and maybe some strawberries. And buy some lemonade for Jake, too.
- Ben: Lemonade, OK. See you later.

Audio 2.04

- 1 We have Spanish classes twice a week.
- 2 I go to a party once a month.
- 3 I check my messages once a minute!
- 4 We meet for lunch every Sunday.
- **5** We only go on holiday once a year.
- 6 I check my emails once an hour.

Audio 2.05

- Waiter: Good evening. Do you have a reservation?
 - Alex: Yes, we have a table for two for 8 p.m. Can we have a table near the window?
- Waiter: Yes, certainly. Here you are. And here are your menus.
- Jenny: Thank you.
- Waiter: Are you ready to order?
 - Alex: Yes, I think so. For the starter, I'd like the olives, please. And I'd like the lamb for the main course.
- Waiter: Very good. And you?
- Jenny: Could I have the soup, then the fish, please?
- Waiter: Sure, no problem. Would you like something to drink?
- Jenny: Can we have some water, please?
- Waiter: Yes, of course.
- Jenny: Thank you.
- Waiter: How is your meal?
- Alex/Jenny: Very good, thank you!

Audio 2.06 and 2.07

- 1 Can we have some water, please?
- **2** Could I have a salad, please?
- 3 Can I have some chips?
- 4 Could we have a table near the window?
- 5 Can I have the soup, please?
- 6 Could we have the bill at the same time?

Audio 2.08 and 2.09

Waiter: Good evening, do you have a reservation?

- Customer: Yes, we have a table for two for half past six. Waiter: Are you ready to order?
- Customer: Yes. For a starter, can I have the salad, please? Waiter: Yes, of course. And for the main course?
- Customer: I'd like the chicken, please. Waiter: Would you like something to drink?
- Customer: Could I have some sparkling water, please? Waiter: Yes, certainly.
- Waiter: Would you like to look at the dessert menu? Customer: No thanks. Could we have the bill, please? Waiter: Yes, of course.

UNIT 3

Audio 3.01

- 1 This oven is easy to use.
- **2** Are these your mirrors?
- 3 These cups in the sink are dirty.
- **4** We like this sofa.
- 5 Your keys are on this shelf.
- 6 Can I eat these eggs in the fridge?

Audio 3.02

- Hayley: Fabien! Nice to see you!
- Fabien: Hi Hayley! So, this is your new place ...
- Hayley: Yes, it is. Come in. So, what do you think?
- Fabien: It's really nice! How about a tour? Hayley: Of course. Please, come in.
- Hayley. Of Cou Espion: Groat
- Fabien: Great!
- Hayley: So, this is the hall. I put my keys on that little table there so I don't lose them.

Fabien: Good idea. I always lose my keys.

Hayley: And this is the living room.

AUDIOSCRIPTS

Fabien: Is that a new sofa?

- Hayley: Yes, it is. Those armchairs are new, too. They're really comfortable.
- Fabien: I like those pictures on the wall.
- Hayley: Thank you. OK, here's the dining room. I want to buy a big table and chairs to put in here.
- Fabien: Then you can have dinner when friends visit.
- Hayley: Yes, that's right!
- Fabien: Where's the kitchen?
- Hayley: You go through there. Let's have a look.
- Fabien: OK. Wow, this is great, Hayley.
- Hayley: Do you like it? There are a lot of cupboards, but I don't need all of them.
- Fabien: Yes, it's very big. You have a lot of space to cook.
- Hayley: Yes, and I love cooking! Right, let me show you upstairs.
- Fabien: OK.
- Hayley: This is the bathroom.
- Fabien: Wow, that shower is really big!
- Hayley: Yes, and it's good, too. Over there is my bedroom. It's very nice, but I don't want to show you, because I need to clean it!
- Fabien: Haha! OK, don't worry. Well, this is a really nice place, Hayley. I'm happy for you.
- Hayley: Thanks, Fabien.

Audio 3.03

- 1 Those armchairs are new, too.
- 2 This is the bathroom.
- **3** That shower is really big!

Audio 3.04

- **1** Have you got any plants?
- 2 She hasn't got much money.
- **3** We've got a lot of milk.
- 4 Have they got a TV?
- **5** I've got two phones.
- 6 Has he got a fridge?

Audio 3.05

- 1 Sorry I'm late.
- 2 Great to see you.
- **3** Oh, thank you. How nice of you!
- 4 No problem.
- **5** Have a safe journey home.
- 6 Thank you for the lovely evening!

Audio 3.06

- Evan: Hello? Bella?
- Bella: Hi Evan. How are you?
- Evan: I'm good, thanks. What about you?
- Bella: We're really well. Would you like to come for dinner on Wednesday and meet James?
- Evan: That would be great! What time?
- Bella: About eight? Is there anything you don't eat?
- Evan: I don't eat meat. I hope that's not a problem.
- Bella: Don't worry, I can make something without meat. Do you eat fish?
- Evan: Yeah, fish is OK. And prawns.
- Bella: No problem.
- Evan: Thanks, Bella.
- Bella: Great, I'll text you my address.
- Evan: See you on Wednesday at eight, then. Thanks!
- Bella: Hi. You made it!

- Evan: Yeah. Sorry I'm late.
- Bella: It's OK. We're late, too. Dinner isn't ready yet. Let me take your coat.
- Evan: Thanks.
- Bella: This is James, my husband. Evan, James.
- James: Hi. Nice to meet you.
- Evan: Nice to meet you, too, James. Bella, these are for you.
- Bella: Oh, flowers thanks! How nice of you!
- James: Let's go into the living room. Can I get you something to drink?
- Evan: Just water, thanks.
- James: Are you sure? We have lemonade, too.
- Evan: Water's fine. Thanks, James.
- James: OK. Would you like still or sparking?
- Evan: Sparkling, please.
- Bella: Would you like some more to eat? Evan: No, thanks, I'm full. That was delicious! But I need
- to go now, I think. Work tomorrow!
- Bella: Glad you liked it. Would you like me to call you a taxi?
- Evan: No thanks. It's a nice evening, so I can walk to my house.
- Bella: OK. See you in the morning. Have a safe journey home.
- Evan: Thank you both for a lovely evening! Bye!

Audio 3.07

- 1 Can I get you something to drink?
- **2** I'd love to come.
- **3** Let me take your coat.

Audio 3.08 and 3.09

- A: Hi!
- B: Hi! Great to see you.
- A: You too. These are for you.
- B: Thank you. How nice of you! Let me take your coat.
- A: Thank you.
- B: Can I get you something to drink?
- A: Yes please. Can I have some water?
- B: Of course. Let me get your drink.

Audio 3.10

Welcome to the village of Little Harding, the perfect place to visit with your family or a quiet day out with friends. There aren't any cinemas or theatres here, but there are lots of other things to do. There are a lot of open spaces for you to enjoy nature, and there's a big forest to walk in. There isn't much traffic, even in the summer, and there is hardly any noise, so you can relax. And don't worry if you forget to bring food, because there's a small café which sells meals and lots of our famous ice cream!

Audio 3.11

- Summer: So, here we are ... What do you think, James? James: It's great!
- Summer: Yes, it's a really nice flat. There are two bedrooms, and one of the bedrooms has a bathroom. In the kitchen there's a new oven and fridge. It's a great place.
- James: I agree. But can I ask about the local area?
- Summer: Of course.
- James: Are there any shops near here? Summer: Yes, there are. There are some small shops in the town centre, very near here. And there's a big

supermarket about a kilometre away. You can walk there.

James: That's good, because I don't have a car. So that's my next question. Is there a train station in the area?

Summer: Yes, there is. There's one in King Street.

- James: That's great. Is there much traffic on this road? Summer: Well, there's a school nearby, so at three p.m.
- when school finishes there's a lot of traffic, but there isn't much noise at other times. It's very quiet at the weekend.
- James: OK. And what about nightlife? Is there much to do in the evening?
- Summer: Well, there's a small café near here, but there aren't any restaurants. But in the centre of town, there are lots of cafés, restaurants and cinemas.
- James: Sounds good. I think ... I want to live here!
- Summer: Great! So, the next thing to do is ...

UNIT 4

Audio 4.01

- A: Hi Ania. Where were you last night?
- B: Oh, yesterday afternoon was busy at work. And two days ago I was in Paris. So I was really tired.
- A: No problem. But let's meet some time soon. We need to do something for your birthday. How about after tomorrow's class?
- B: I can't, sorry. What about Saturday, in the afternoon?
- A: Maybe we can have birthday cake at Mason's?
- B: Good idea! I love that restaurant. But my birthday was a week ago ...
- A: Oh, really? Sorry! So it was last Wednesday?
- B: Yes. That's why I was in Paris last weekend.
- A: Ah, I see! Well, we can have a late birthday lunch on Saturday. No problem!

Audio 4.02

- 1 She wasn't born in 2000.
- 2 Were they at home last night?
- **3** Yes, they were.
- 4 Where were you in 2020?
- 5 No, he wasn't. He was with Andy.
- **6** We were very happy with our hotel.

Audio 4.03

- Nadia: What have you got there, Danny?
- Danny: It's an article called 'Big events of the 21st Century'.
- Nadia: Oh, really? And what's in it?
- Danny: Let's see ... Can you guess?
- Nadia: OK. Well, what about when Barack Obama was president?
- Danny: Yes! That's there. Can you remember when it was?
- Nadia: Was it ... 2008? Danny: Yes, it was! OK, the first one is when Facebook started. When was that?
- Nadia: Um, that was 2006, I think.
- Danny: No, it wasn't. It was back in 2004!
- Nadia: Wow, really? I didn't think it was that early.
- Danny: OK, here's another one. There were seven billion of something in 2011. Do you know what they were?
- Nadia: Hmm. That's difficult. I don't know ... trees?

- Danny: No, people! There were seven billion people in the world in 2011.
- Nadia: Ah, right, of course! What other events are in the article?
- Danny: Ha, OK. Malala Yousafzai won the Nobel Peace Prize in 2014.
- Nadia: Oh yes. Was she the youngest person to win it?
- Danny: Yes, she was seventeen years old! OK, when were the first camera phones in the shops?
- Nadia: Hmm. I think they were around in ... 2005.
- Danny: No. The first camera phones were in the shops around the year 2000.
- Nadia: Really? And after that, selfies were really popular.
- Danny: They still are! But there was an important selfie in
- the news in 2012. Can you remember why? Nadia: No idea.
- Danny: It was from Mars it was a NASA robot!
- Nadia: Ah, right. Yes, I remember now! Amazing.

Audio 4.04

- **1** In 2018 three point five seven two billion viewers watched the FIFA World Cup.
- 2 An average blue whale weighs about 18,000 kilograms.
- **3** What was life like a hundred years ago?
- **4** In 2021, the population of Australia was twenty-five point eight million.
- **5** Over seventy-five and a half million people visit Paris every year.
- **6** The average person walks round the Earth four point five times in their life.

Audio 4.05

- A: I'm at the station. How far is it to your house?
- B: It's about ten minutes by bus.
- A: And how long does it take to walk?
- B: About half an hour.
- A: Hmm, OK, the bus then. How much is the ticket?
- B: Not much. It's only a pound, I think.
- A: And how many stops before I get off?
- B: Let me think ... it's four or five.
- A: OK, thanks. Oh, it's here now. See you soon.

Audio 4.06 and 4.07

- **1** A: How much is this watch?
 - B: It's £350.
 - A: Sorry, how much?
- **2** A: How many people are in your English class?B: About twenty.
 - A: Sorry, how many?
- 3 A: How far is the supermarket from here?B: It's about ten kilometres.A: Sorry, how far?
- 4 A: How long was the meeting?B: Four hours.
- A: Sorry, how long?
- 5 A: How tall is your brother?B: He's two metres.A: Sorry, how tall?
- 6 A: How old is your boss?B: She's about thirty.A: Sorry, how old?

AUDIOSCRIPTS

Audio 4.08

1	4		
1	1		

1	
Ben:	Excuse me. Could you help me?
Assistant 1:	Sure. How can I help?
	Do you sell books on Thai cooking?
Assistant 1:	Yes, of course. Come with me Here you are.
	This one is very good. It has lots of recipes.
-	Curry, salads, desserts and more.
	I see. How much is it?
	This one is 25 pounds.
	Hmmm. That's a bit expensive.
Assistant I.	What about this one? It's only 10 pounds, and it's easy to use.
Ren [.]	Yes, it looks good. I'll take it.
Assistant 1:	
2	
_	Excuse me, could you help me?
	Yes, of course.
	Do you sell men's shirts?
	Of course. You need the clothes department.
Assistant 2.	It's on the third floor.
Ben [.]	Thank you.
	Hi. I like this shirt, but I don't like green. Have
Den.	you got it in a different colour?
Assistant 3:	Let me see we also have it in blue.
	Great. Can I try it on?
Assistant 3:	
	Where are the changing rooms?
Assistant 3:	
	Thank you.
	How was it?
	Great, I really like it. Can I pay by phone?
	Yes, that's fine. Do you need a bag?
	No thanks. Could I have a receipt?
	Yes of course. Here you are Have a good day

Assistant 3: Yes, of course. Here you are. Have a good day. Ben: Thank you. You too.

Audio 4.09

- 1 Can I pay by phone?
- 2 Can I try it on?
- **3** How much is it?
- 4 Could I have a receipt?

Audio 4.10 and 4.11

- A: Excuse me, can you help me?
- B: Yes, of course.
- A: Do you sell laptop chargers? For this laptop?
- B: Let me see ... yes, we do. Here you are.
- A: Great, thanks. How much is it?
- B: This one is thirty pounds.
- A: Good, I'll take it. Can I pay by phone?
- B: Yes, that's fine.
- A: Could I have a receipt?
- B: Sure. Here you are.
- A: Thanks.

UNIT 5

Audio 5.01

- 1 We watched a really good film on TV last night.
- **2** Last year Salma visited London for the first time.
- **3** I played football with my friends on Sunday.
- 4 I stopped eating meat last year.
- **5** Ben wanted to study Russian at school.
- 6 Everyone looked tired at the end of the day.
- **7** When she young, Daria lived in Moldova.
- 8 I started work early this morning.

Audio 5.02

Here at Central Adult Education Centre, we have lots of different courses to help you in life. Many of our students leave school at sixteen, then find it difficult to get a good job. We can help you learn important skills that you need to pass your exams or go to university. Some of our students become teachers and doctors! It's not just work skills. We can help you learn to drive with our excellent teachers. And we're a friendly place. Lots of students meet their best friends here! So don't wait. Call us today!.

Audio 5.03

- 1 left
- 2 drove
- 3 had
- 4 woke up
- 5 went 6 drank
- **7** said
- 8 rang

1

o rang

Audio 5.04

Manuel: I work in a greengrocer's at weekends, and last month was my twenty-first birthday. At the end of the day my boss asked me to close the shop. I shut the door and turned around, and there was my boss, my friends and some of the customers. They all shouted, 'surprise!' I didn't tell anyone it was my birthday, but my boss knew and he told them. There were twenty people in the small shop and we all ate some chocolate cake! It was really funny.

2

Taylor: Last summer I passed my driving test. I was very happy because it was the third time I tried. The weekend after, my friends booked a hotel by the sea, about a hundred kilometres from where we live. It was a surprise for me. We left home in my car and we were about half an hour from the hotel when the car stopped working. It started to rain but we had to wait on the road for a mechanic! After two hours a man came and the car started again, but we were all so cold and unhappy that we drove home!

3

Craig: I remember the first day I started university very well. My parents took me in their car and helped me move into my new apartment, which I shared with three other people. After they left, another student arrived. I was surprised to see it was my old friend

Jamie! When we were young, we were best friends, but his family moved away from our town when he was seven. It was great to meet him again. After that we were friends all the time we were at university!

Audio 5.05

- Maria: Chris. this is the third time this month!
- Chris: I know, I'm so sorry. It was the bus. It came fortyfive minutes late!
- Maria: OK. No problem. Please go to the kitchen and David will tell you what to do today.
- Chris: Um ... I don't have my work shirt. I left it at home. I'm really sorry.
- Maria: That's all right. There's one in the cupboard. You can wear that.
- Chris: OK. I'm really sorry, Maria! I ...
- 2
- Mark: Good afternoon.
- Teacher: Hello Mr Wilson. Now we don't have much time left, so let's start.
- Mark: Why not? I'm early!
- Teacher: No. Our meeting was at half past three. Mark: Oh really? Oh I'm so sorry, I had the wrong time.
- Teacher: No problem. Now I need to talk to you about Simon. His homework is ...

3

- Tobias: Hi Lana.
- Lana: Hi Tobias. How are you?
- Tobias: Not bad, thanks. I'm calling about the Smith Company report. I can't see it in my emails and needed it yesterday. Did you write it?
- Lana: Ah. The report. I'm sorry, I have it, but I didn't send it. My wifi is down at the moment.

Tobias: Really? Why is that?

Lana: I moved house two days ago.

Tobias: Ah, I see. It's OK. Can you send it to me before ...

Audio 5.06

- 1 I'm so sorry I'm late.
- 2 That's all right.
- 3 No problem.

Audio 5.07 and 5.08

- 1 I'm sorry I'm late.
- 2 I'm really sorry I'm late.
- 3 I'm so sorry I'm late.

Audio 5.09 and 5.10

- A: Where were you? You're late.
- B: I know, I'm really sorry. There was a problem with my car.
- A: OK ...
- B: Then the bus was late.
- A: That's all right. But let's go through. People are here to see your presentation now.
- B: What do you mean? Don't we start at 10.30?
- A: No, the meeting was at ten. We only have thirty minutes left.
- B: Oh, no. I had the wrong time! I'm so sorry.
- A: It's OK, but let's go now!
- B: Yes, of course.

Audio 5.11

- Jago: How was your weekend, Isabelle?
- Isabelle: OK. It was a bit boring, really.
- Jago: Why? What did you do?
- Isabelle: Nothing special. I went for a walk on Saturday, then woke up at eleven on Sunday and just relaxed on the sofa and watched TV. Jago: Oh, right.
- Isabelle: Yes, to be honest, I was happy to be back at work today!

2

- Kevin: Hi Adriana!
- Adriana: Oh, hi Kevin. How are you? Kevin: Good thanks. How was your weekend?
- Adriana: It was great. A really fun weekend. Kevin: Oh really? What did you do?
- Adriana: Well, I went to a party on Saturday. I met some really nice people and I danced a lot! Kevin: That sounds fun. When did you get home?
- Adriana: Really late, two in the morning, I think. Then yesterday I stayed at home and spent time with my family. I'm still tired. I need some coffee!

3

- Selena: Hey Finn, come and sit next to me. How are you? How was your weekend?
 - Finn: My weekend was nice, thanks.
- Selena: Cool. What did you do?
 - Finn: So, on Saturday I met a friend for coffee and we went to museum. Then in the evening I went to the cinema to watch a film.
- Selena: Who did you go with?
 - Finn: I went with my girlfriend. Then on Sunday I went to the gym, I always go on Sundays. Then I went to bed early.

Selena: Sounds good. Oh, here's the teacher.

UNIT 6

Audio 6.01

- 1 Where are you going?
- 2 What are you listening to?
- **3** <u>Who</u> are you <u>talking</u> to?
- 4 Why are you running?
- 5 What are you wearing?

Audio 6.02

- Nikki: Hello?
- Clive: Good afternoon, is that Nikki White? Nikki: Yes, speaking.
- Clive: Oh, hi. My name's Clive, I'm calling from the taxi company.
- Nikki: Oh right, yes. I'm just waiting for my bags. Are you at the airport?
- Clive: Er ... no, I'm not. Listen I'm sorry, but I'm a bit late. The traffic is really bad. I'm driving there now, though.
- Nikki: Oh.
- Clive: Can I ask you to wait outside the airport after you go through security?
- Nikki: Of course. No problem.
- Clive: Great. Please wait for me at the taxi stop. It's very busy there, so please tell me what you look like, then I can find you when I arrive.

AUDIOSCRIPTS

- Nikki: Yes, of course. Oh wait, I'm going through security now. Can I call you back in a few minutes?
- Clive: Yes, of course. Call me on this number. Nikki: OK.
- Clive: Hello?
- Nikki: Hi Clive, it's me again, Nikki White.
- Clive: Ah yes. Hi, Nikki.
- Nikki: I'm at the taxi stop. I'm standing next to a blue taxi. I'm tall, and I've got long, straight hair.
- Clive: OK. What colour is your hair?
- Nikki: Red. Red hair. And I'm wearing jeans and a black jacket.
- Clive: Ah, OK. I'm arriving now ... I think I can see you ... I'm driving a big, black car. Can you see me?
- Nikki: Oh yes, hi! OK, I'm coming to you now.

Audio 6.03

Great group moment!

Do you have an amazing photo of a group moment you'd like to share? Send it to us with a short description and say why it was great. You can win a camera!

Audio 6.04

- 1 It's <u>bigger</u> than a <u>house</u>.
- 2 They're worse than cars.
- 3 It's more <u>expensive</u> than a <u>holiday</u>.
- **4** They're <u>smaller</u> than <u>bikes</u>.
- 5 It's easier than that.
- 6 They're more <u>comfortable</u> than <u>planes</u>.

Audio 6.05

Monika: Excuse me, can you help me? How do you get to ... erm ... Firstpoint electronics? The receptionist at my hotel said it's near here. Pedestrian: Firstpoint electronics? It was near here, but it closed last month. Monika: Oh no. I need to buy a phone charger. Pedestrian: No problem. You can try Mason's. It's a department store that sells computers, phones ... those things. Monika: Great, thanks! And how do I get there? Pedestrian: OK, walk down this road, then turn right into Forest Road. Monika: Forest Road. Right. Pedestrian: So after you turn into Forest Road, continue straight on. At the end of the road there's a square. Monika: OK. Pedestrian: Cross over the square. On the other side there's a crossroads. Turn right at the crossroads, into Griffin Road. Monika: Crifton Road, OK. Pedestrian: No, it's Griffin Road. Monika: OK. sorry. Pedestrian: Walk along Griffin Road, past the traffic lights, and the department store is on the left. Monika: Great, thanks. And how far is it? Pedestrian: It's about ten minutes. Monika: Thank you so much, that's really helpful. Pedestrian: No problem. Enjoy your stay. Monika: Thank you!

Audio 6.06 and 6.07

- A: So at the crossroads, I turn right.
 B: No, at the crossroads you turn <u>left</u>.
- 2 A: OK. So I walk down this street, then stop at the café right?
 - B: No, you go <u>past</u> the café.
- **3** A: OK so I go down Vernon Drive? B: No, it's Verdon Drive.

Audio 6.08 and 6.09

- A: Excuse me, how do you get to the station?
- B: Go to the end of the road and turn left at the corner.
- A: OK.
- B: Go past the statue and there's a crossroads.
- A: Yes.
- B: Go straight on at the crossroads into Creen Road.
- A: Green Road, got it.
- B: No, it's Creen road.
- A: Ah OK, sorry. Creen Road.
- B: The station is on your left.
- A: Thank you.

UNIT 7

Audio 7.01

- **1** I get up early in the morning.
- 2 I'd like an apple and an orange.
- **3** We've got a meeting in the morning.
- 4 These two things are the same.
- **5** She's got a good job in a company.
- 6 He's on the phone at the moment.

Audio 7.02

- **1** She's isn't thinking about anything.
- 2 It doesn't look good.
- 3 He isn't driving today.
- **4** She doesn't like cheese.
- 5 He isn't speaking to her.
- 6 It isn't raining today.

Audio 7.03

Ava: Hello and welcome to the New Life podcast. This weekend I spoke to two people who give up their free time to help the local community. Listen to what they said.

I'm here with Wesley in the North Street community garden. He works here every Saturday. So, Wesley, what do you usually do?

- Wesley: Hi, Ava. Well, I'm a teacher, so in the week I work at a secondary school.
- Ava: And what are you doing today?
- Wesley: Today I'm working in vegetable garden. We grow lots of things: onions, potatoes, tomatoes ... and give them to local people.
 - Ava: That's great! What are you growing at the moment?
- Wesley: Oh, we're not growing anything now. It's January, so it's too cold to grow plants. At the moment we're picking up rubbish and taking out old plants, preparing the garden for the spring.
 - Ava: It looks like hard work!

- Wesley: It is! But later in the year, when we have lots of fruit and vegetables, it's really nice.
 - Ava: Thanks, Wesley. I'm with Josie now, at a football club in Warhurst. Hi Josie, what do you do here?
 - Josie: Hello. I'm one of five people who train the local girls' football team, the Warhurst Wanderers. The girls are aged from fourteen to seventeen and we play here every Sunday.
 - Ava: Wow, great work. And what do you do in the week?
 - Josie: Monday to Friday, I work for the local government. I like my job, but I'm in an office all day, which is a bit boring. I prefer to be outside. So it's great to come here and spend time with the girls. They all love playing football!
 - Ava: And what are you doing today?
 - Josie: Today we're practising for next week, when we have a big game. We are also talking about our plans for the game.
 - Ava: Fantastic. Good luck for next week!

Audio 7.04

Thank you for phoning MovMaxx cinemas. Please select an option. For films and times, press 1. For ticket prices, press 2. To speak to one of our team, press 5. Alternatively, please visit our website at MovMaxx.co.uk.

Audio 7.05

- Hailey: Hello, MovMaxx cinemas. You're speaking to Hailey. Thank you for waiting. How can I help you today?
- Justin: Hi there. I'm phoning to ask about the film *Total*. Are you showing it at the moment?
- Hailey: Yes, we are.
- Justin: Great, and what times is it on?
- Hailey: Sorry, could you hold on a minute? Sorry about that, and thanks for waiting. OK. Is it for today?
- Justin: No it's for Saturday.
- Hailey: Just a moment ... Saturday ... it's on at 3 p.m., 6.30 and 8.55. There's also a late showing at 11 p.m.
- Justin: Thank you. How much are the tickets?
- Hailey: They're ten pounds for the 3 p.m. showing, and twelve pounds fifty for all the others. You can buy tickets on our website at movmaxx.co.uk, or here at the ticket office.
- Justin: OK. What are your opening hours? I'm shopping in town so I can come in to buy tickets now.
- Hailey: The ticket office is open from 10.30 a.m. to 11 p.m. Justin: Great, thanks. ... I have another question. Can I
- bring my own food to the cinema? Hailey: Yes, that's fine. But we also sell food here.
- Justin: OK, thanks.
- Hailey: No problem. Can I help you with anything else?
- Justin: No, that's all. Thank you for your help.
- Hailey: Thank you for calling. Goodbye.
- Justin: Bye.

Audio 7.06 and 7.07

- 1 I'm phoning to ask about a film.
- **2** I have another question.
- 3 Thank you for waiting.
- 4 What are your opening hours?
- **5** Can I help you with anything else?
- 6 No, that's all. Thank you for your help.

Audio 7.08 and 7.09

- A: Hello, this is the leisure centre. How can I help you?
- B: Hi. I'm phoning to ask about the swimming pool.
- A: What would you like to know?
- B: Could you tell me the opening times?
- A: Of course. The swimming pool is open to the public from four to seven.
- B: Great, thanks.
- A: No problem. Can I help you with anything else?
- B: Yes, I have another question. How much does it cost to swim there?
- A: It's five pounds for adults and three pounds for children. B: Thank you.
- A: Is there anything else?
- B: No, that's all. Thank you for your help.

Audio 7.10

- Carol: Good morning class, and welcome to your first English lesson here at Gladwell College. For our first activity I want you to work in groups of three. Please tell each other a little bit about yourselves, say why you're learning English and one other thing you want to learn in your free time.
- Ricardo: OK. Hi, guys. I'm Ricardo, I'm from Italy. I'm an engineer and I'm working here in Oxford at the moment. I'm learning English because I need to use it in my job. I really want to speak and write better, because I write emails and have meetings in English every day. In my free time I'm trying to learn the piano as a hobby. What about you?
 - Kura: Nice to meet you, Ricardo. So, my name's Kura, and I'm from Osaka, in Japan. I own a company that makes clothes. I really love my job! I'm learning English because I need to give presentations about my clothes to companies and shops in the UK and the USA. It's really important for the future of my business! I don't have much free time, but I love dancing and I want to learn to dance salsa and tango.
 - Maria: Hi guys. Great to meet you. I'm Maria and I'm from Madrid in Spain. I live in Oxford with my partner, who is from Scotland. At the moment I'm working as a shop assistant, but I'm learning English because I'd like to work as a Spanish teacher. I need to speak and write in English well to do that. I would also love to learn more about photography. I plan to do a course in that next month.

UNIT 8

Audio 8.01

- 1 It's the most expensive place to visit.
- 2 It's the best way to see elephants.
- **3** It's the driest place on the planet.
- **4** Neptune is the furthest planet from Earth.
- **5** It's the smallest area.
- **6** The coldest month is January.

AUDIOSCRIPTS

Audio 8.02

- 1 Who are you going to see?
- 2 Is she going to leave?
- **3** <u>Where</u> are they going to <u>stay</u>?
- 4 How are we going to travel?
- 5 Are you going to play?
- 6 What are we going to do?

Audio 8.03

- Viv: So, have you got any holiday plans this summer, Dillon?
- Dillon: Yes! My friend Karl and I are going to Rio de Janeiro in Brazil!
- Viv: Really? That's amazing!
- Dillon: I know. We're going to stay in a really nice hotel on Copacabana beach.
 - Viv: Oh wow.
- Dillon: We have plans for when we're there, too.
- Viv: Oh yeah? What are you going to do?
- Dillon: Well, first, I'm going to try the local food. I really want to eat feijoada, a traditional dish made with black beans and rice.
- Viv: Yum! Sounds good.
- Dillon: So, for two days we're just going to look around the city and spend some time on the beach. Then on the third day we're going on an organised tour.
 - Viv: And what are you going to see?
- Dillon: Well, first there's Corcovado, the mountain in the middle of the city. Then we're going to visit Santa Teresa, the old town. It's famous for its artists and culture.
- Viv: And are you going to visit any places outside Rio?
- Dillon: Yes. In the second week we're going to visit Búzios. It's a small town about 200 km east of Rio. I read that the beaches there are wonderful. Viv: That's nice.
- Dillon: And because Karl loves taking photos, he's going to take a photography class there. Then we're going to go back to Rio for the last few days.
- Viv: And what are you going to do there?
- Dillon: Relax. We're not going to do anything! Just swim in the sea or the pool, I think.
- Viv: Sounds brilliant. How long are you going for?
- Dillon: Two weeks. I can't wait!

Audio 8.04

1

- Receptionist: Hello. How can I help you?
 - Guest 1: Hi there. I'm travelling with my daughter, so I booked a twin room, but we're in a double. There's only one bed.
- Receptionist: Let's see. What's your room number? Guest 1: It's 119.
- Receptionist: Oh sorry, that's a mistake. Let me give you another room.
 - Guest 1: Great, thank you.
- Receptionist: OK. Here you are, it's room 372. You can take the lift to get to the third floor over there on the left
 - Guest 1: Thank you.

2	
Receptionist:	Hello, Reception. You're speaking to Stephen.
Guest 2:	Hi there. The TV in my room isn't working. I can't turn it on. Can someone help?
Receptionist:	Oh, I'm sorry to hear that. I'll send someone up to look at it.
Guest 2:	Thank you.
	You're welcome. Can I help you with anything else?
Guest 2:	Yes, please. How do I order room service?
Receptionist:	Just phone 111. Or I can take your order now, if you like.
Guest 2:	No thanks. I need to look at the menu first.
Receptionist:	OK.
3	
Guest 2:	Excuse me. Is it possible to book an airport transfer for tomorrow?
Receptionist:	Just a moment. I'll check on the computer. I'm sorry, madam, I'm afraid that's not possible. All our drivers are booked. But I can try another transport service if you like.
	Oh, yes please. That's kind of you.
	OK, I'll call them now. Thank you.
4	
Receptionist:	Hello, Reception. You're speaking to Stephen.
Curat 1	Li Pro colline france as 272 le there e cofe

Guest 1: Hi, I'm calling from room 372. Is there a safe in the room? I'd like to keep my passport in it

Receptionist: I'm afraid our rooms don't have safes, madam. But I can put your passport in the safe here at reception, if you like.

- Guest 1: Thanks, that's kind of you. I'll come down in a minute
- Receptionist: No problem.

Audio 8.05

- 1 I send someone up.
- 2 I'll do that right now.
- **3** I'll call room service.
- 4 I check.

Audio 8.06

- **1** I'll send someone up.
- 2 I'll do that right now.
- **3** I'll call room service.
- 4 I'll check.

Audio 8.07 and 8.08

- A: Hello, Reception. You're speaking to Jessie.
- B: Hello. I'm calling about the air conditioning. How do I turn it on? Can someone help?
- A: Of course. I'll send someone up. Which room is it?
- B: 204. Thank you.
- A: No problem. Can I help you with anything else?
- B: Yes, please. I'd like to order room service. How do I do that?
- A: Just phone 100 to speak to someone from the restaurant.
- B: Wonderful. Thank you.

Audio 8.09

- A: How was your weekend?
- B: It was brilliant, thanks!
- A: Why? What happened?
- B: I had a basketball game on Sunday and my team won. We played really well.
- A: Cool!
- B: Yes, I was worried before the game because I slept badly on Saturday night. But we worked really hard in the game. That's why we won. The other team had one player who was very fast, but we stopped him. What about you? How was your weekend?
- A: It was really good. I went mountain biking. My friend cycles dangerously sometimes, but I'm always careful.

UNIT 1

Lesson 1A

VOCABULARY 1A basketball, tennis player farm, office worker bus, train driver art, university student business, hotel manager

B1b2c3a4c5a6b

- 2A 1 actor
 - 2 shop assistant
 - 3 pilot
 - 4 engineer
 - 5 police officer
 - 6 writer
 - 7 lawyer
 - 8 nurse
 - 9 retired
 - 10 unemployed
- 2B 1 doctor
 - 2 singer
 - 3 politician
 - 4 scientist
 - 5 digital designer
 - 6 pilot

GRAMMAR

3A	2	are don't do	5	are aren't aren't
3 B	2 3	are don't live are	6 7	speak Do don't live

- 3C 1 Do you speak Spanish?
 - 2 Where are they from?
 - 3 Do you know Chiara?
 - 4 Where do you come from?
 - 5 Do your children go to school near here?
 - 6 Do we have homework tonight?
 - 7 Do your parents like pizza?
 - 8 How do you know Tim?

3D1 d **2** g **3** e **4** a **5** h **6** f

7 c 8 b

PRONUNCIATION

- 4A 1 How do you know Sarah?
 - 2 Do you like your job?
 - 3 Do you work with Paul?
 - 4 Where do you live?
 - 5 What do you do?
 - 6 Do you come from Poland?

LISTENING

- 5A a, c, d
- 5B 1 T
- **2** T
 - **3** F ('we're old friends')
 - 4 F ('I'm from Canada')
 - **5** T **6** T

5C 1 are **2** too

3 this

4 meet

6 from 7 Do

5 know

8 do

WRITING

- 6A 1 Frank Bacall
 - 2 travel writer
 - 3 South African
 - 4 Cape Town
 - 5 meet people, learn languages, play tennis and badminton
 - 6 fcb@mailer.com
- 6B Hi, my name's Frank Bacall and I'm a travel writer. I'm from Cape Town in South Africa. I love my job because I go to lots of different countries. I often visit Thailand, France and the USA. I love to meet people and learn languages. I speak Spanish, Portuguese and a little Thai. I'm interested in sport, too. I play tennis and badminton. Welcome to my blog. I hope you like it! If you want to know more about the places I visit, then please contact me at fcb@mailer.com.
- 6C Sample answer

Hi! My name's Bruna Pereira and I'm a singer. I'm from Rio de Janeiro in Brazil and I speak Portuguese, Spanish and a little English. I love my job because I love to sing. It's fun! I sing in Brazil, Argentina and sometimes Chile. I'm interested in sport, too. I play tennis with my friends at the weekend. I also like the cinema. Welcome to my blog. I hope you like it! If you want to know more about me, then please contact me at b.pereira@songcamp.com.

Lesson 1B

VOCABULARY

- 1A1 e 2 a 3 g 4 d 5 h 6 b 7 f 8 c
- 1B 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 b
- 1C 1 I teach at a university.
 - 2 I get up early every day.
 - **3** I also play the guitar.
 - **4** We go out a lot.
 - 5 I don't make a lot of money.

GRAMMAR

2A1b2a3c4a

- 2B 1 works
 - 2 starts
 - 3 finishes
 - 4 isn't
 - 5 eats 6 visit
 - 7 play
 - 8 cook
 - 9 studies
 - 10 goes
- 2C a starts, works
 - **b** goes out
 - c goes, has
 - d studies
 - e gets up
 - f teaches

2D1 e 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 d 6 b

PRONUNCIATION

3A 1 /1z/ 2 /s/ 3 /s/ 4 /z/ 5 /z/ 6 /1z/ 7 /z/ 8 /s/ 9 /1z/ 10 /z/

READING

4 b

- **5A 1** F ('My best friend is Annie.')
 - **2** F ('She studies Spanish because her boyfriend is from Argentina.')
 - **3** T ('I don't start work until 12 ... I finish work at 8 p.m.')
 - 4 T ('we always see each other at weekends')
 - 5 F (Annie is a lawyer, so she doesn't go to school.)
 - 6 F ('We have different interests')
 - 7 T ('Rowan plays a lot of sport')
 - 8 F ('He loves cooking, but I hate it')

5B1 c2 a 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 b

Lesson 1C

VOCABULARY

1 1 thirsty

- 2 ill
- 3 angry
- 4 bored
- 5 all right
- 6 tired7 hungry
- 8 relaxed
- 2A 1 at
 4 on

 2 next
 5 on

 3 6 this

 2B 1 5 on / this

 2 at
 6 on / this

 3 7 at

4	this	

ноw то ...

- **3A 1** M ('I'm hungry.')
 - **2** F ('I have a class at twelve')
 - **3** F ('Can we meet at the café on East Street?')

8 at

- **4** M ('I love that place.')
- **5** M ('Can we meet at two?')
- 3B 1 Can we do something this evening?2 What would you like to do?
 - 3 Let's meet at the cinema.

PRONUNCIATION

4A1|2N3|4|5N6|

SPEAKING

- 5A 1 things
 - 2 Would
 - 3 can't
 - **4** OK
 - 5 Bye

Lesson 1D

GRAMMAR

- **1A 1** c **2** a **3** b **4** b
- 1B A: Who's (contraction) that in the photo?
 - B: **That's** (*contraction*) my sister and her family. Her **name's** (*contraction*) Charlotte. Her **husband's** (*possession*) name is Andy, and they're both teachers.

- A: Do they have children?
- B: They have a daughter. Their **daughter's** (*possession*) name is Emily. They also have a dog. Their **dog's** (*possession*) name is Buster.
- A: Do you live near your parents?
- B: Yes, we all do. My **parent's** (*possession*) house is in the street next to us, so we all live quite near.

LISTENING

2A Grace: From: Scotland; Lives: Birmingham; Job: digital designer

Marco: From: New York; Lives: London; Job: pilot

- 2B 1 Sally
 - 2 Alan
 - 3 Deepak 4 Leila
 - 5 Veronika
 - 6 Oliver
 - 7 April
 - 8 Zach

UNIT 2

Lesson 2A

VOCABULARY

- **1A 1** orange juice
 - 2 tomatoes
 - 3 rice
 - 4 broccoli
 - 5 eggs
 - 6 apple
 - 7 beans
 - **8** yoghurt
- 1B 1 sugar
 - 2 cereal
 - 3 bread
 - **4** apple juice
 - 5 noodles
 - 6 chicken 7 carrots
 - **8** oil
 - 9 pear
 - 10 grapes

GRAMMAR

 2A 1 any
 4 some

 2 some
 5 an

 3 6 some

2B1b2a3b4b5a6b7a8a

PRONUNCIATION

3A	1	some	5	an
	2	an	6	some
	3	a	7	some
	4	some	8	a, an

LISTENING

- **4A 1** b ('Theo loves meat')
 - 2 c ('Yuki doesn't eat meat, but she eats fish.')3 a ('Jake eats a lot of vegetables')
- **4B** cheese, olives, orange juice, pasta
- **4C 1** T ('Theo loves meat, so we could buy some lamb, or chicken.')
 - 2 F ('Yuki doesn't eat meat, but she eats fish.')
 - **3** T ('Let's get some prawns. They sell really nice ones at the market.')

- **4** F ('Jake eats a lot of vegetables, so you can buy broccoli or carrots as well.')
- 5 F ('Oh, can you buy something for dessert, too?')
- **6** T ('And buy some lemonade for Jake, too.')

WRITING

- 5A 1 Giselle
 - **2** Tom
 - **3** Jaylan, Giselle
 - **4** Jaylan
 - **5** Jaylan, Tom**6** Jaylan, Giselle
- 5B 1 but
 4 but

 2 and
 5 or

 3 and
 6 or
- **5C** This is a photo of my favourite healthy food a rainbow salad. I usually eat meat **or** fish for dinner, **but** not today! I like this salad because it's easy to make. You use lots of vegetables with different colours! This one has green cucumber, red tomatoes, red onions, yellow peppers **and** green herbs. I like to drink sparkling water with it.

That looks very nice, Jaylan. I want to make it **and** eat it! My favourite healthy food is Moqueca. It's a fish soup that we eat here in the north of Brazil. You can buy it in other countries, **but** it's not the same. It's fish, red peppers, onions **or** other vegetables in a tomato sauce. Mmm, I can smell it now!

My favourite healthy food is a fruit salad. I make it with strawberries, melon **and** pears. I sometimes use oranges too, **but** when I don't have any, I add a little bit of lemonade **or** sparkling water. It's great on a hot day when I feel thirsty.

6B Sample answer

My favourite healthy food is a vegetable omelette. I don't like eggs for breakfast, but I eat them for lunch – that's when I make this. It's three eggs with different vegetables. Sometimes I use red pepper and sometimes broccoli. I drink it with still water or green tea. It's very easy!

Lesson 2B VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 go, meet
 - 2 get up, goes
 - 3 spend, spends
 - **4** go to, check

1B 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b

 1C
 1 get
 5 spend

 2 go
 6 check

 3 meet
 7 up

 4 spend
 8 go

GRAMMAR

- 2A1b2c3b4c
- 2B 1 never
 - 2 We often
 - 3 weekend
 - 4 times
 - 5 am never
 - 6 How
 - 7 always 8 reads

- **2C 1** It's never quiet
 - 2 My son often gets up late
 - ${\bf 3}\,$ he hardly ever eats it
 - **4** my wife usually listens to the news
 - **5** My daughter often listens to music
 - 6 I'm never late for work

PRONUNCIATION

- 3A 1 week
 - 2 month
 - 3 minute
 - 4 Sunday
 - 5 year
 - 6 hour

READING

- 4A 1 twice
 - 2 ever
 - 3 weekend
 - 4 always5 often
 - 6 Every
 - **7** on
 - 8 Sometimes
- 4C1 b2 c3 a

Lesson 2C

VOCABULARY

- **1A 1** dessert
 - 2 waiter
 - 3 starter
 - **4** bill
 - **5** dinner for two
 - 6 service charge
- **1B 1** Dinner for two
 - 2 Starters
 - 3 Main courses
 - 4 Desserts
 - **5** service charge **6** hill
 - 7 waiter

ноw то ...

- 2A 1 W 2 M 3 M 4 W
- **2B 1** reservation
 - **2** for
 - 3 table
 - 4 Are
 - 5 For
 - 6 like
 - **7** to **8** meal

PRONUNCIATION

3A 1 P 2 P 3 NP 4 P 5 P 6 NP

SPEAKING

4A 1 c **2** a **3** d **4** e **5** b

Lesson 2D

GRAMMAR

- 1A1 c2 b3 a4 b5 a6 a
- **1B 1** doing
 - 2 getting up
 - 3 swimming
 - 4 spending

- 5 meeting
- 6 studying
- 7 shopping
- 8 walking

READING

- 2A 1 Queens, New York
 - 2 a T-shirt
- **2B 1** T ('This 5,000 km race happens every year from June to August.')
 - **2** F ('5,000 km is the same distance as from the East to the West of the USA, plus eleven marathons (a marathon is 42.2 km).')
 - **3** T ('in Queens, New York')
 - **4** F ('people run from 6 a.m. until midnight, every day')
 - 5 F ('They need to visit the doctor before they enter, to check they are strong and healthy.')
 - **6** T ('They need to eat all the time because they use a lot of energy when they do the race.')
 - 7 T ('It's very hot in New York at this time of year')
 - 8 T ('Not everyone finishes the race, but runners receive a T-shirt if they do')

REVIEW 1-2

GRAMMAR

- **1A 1** Where do you live?
 - 2 Are James and Agatha friends?
 - **3** I don't understand German.
 - **4** Do you like your city?
 - **5** Do your parents speak English?
 - 6 They don't come from Canada.
 - 7 Who do you live with?
 - 8 What time do your children get up?

8 are

1B	1	work	5	don't
	2	Do	6	does
	3	like	7	play

- **4** do you
- 2 1 mother's
 - 2 cousins
 - 3 Simon's
 - 4 children's
 - **5** parents'
 - 6 Georgia's
 - 7 film's
 - 8 students'

3A 1 b **2** a **3** a **4** c

3 B	1	a	5	some
	2	an	6	any
	3	a	7	some
	4	some	8	any

- 4 1 | always get up late at the weekend.2 Susan never works at the weekend.
 - **3** I meet my mum for lunch **every** Sunday.
 - 4 Mark is hardly ever late for school.
 - **5** I play tennis with my friend **on** Tuesdays.
 - **6** How often do you listen to the news?
 - 7 My parents go on holiday twice **a** year.
 - **8** I'm **always** very tired in the evening.
- 5A 1 taking
 - 2 running
 - **3** playing
 - 4 writing
 - 5 doing
 - 6 getting up

5B We need to plan some activities for the company activity day on 23 March. What does everyone like do doing? I know that Yana hates go going to parties and Marcus doesn't like do doing sport. I enjoy play playing games outside, but the weather isn't always good at that time of year.

Maybe we could do something inside. James loves cook cooking, so how about a cooking lesson for the team? I think cook cooking is all right, and Aisha likes it, too. Can you ask the rest of the team? I want us to do something that everyone can enjoy.

VOCABULARY

- 6A 1 writer
 - 2 nurse
 - 3 scientist
 - **4** doctor
 - 5 actor
 - 6 engineer
 - 7 police officer
- **8** lawyer
- 6B1 c 2 f 3 a 4 d 5 e 6 b 7 g
- 7 1 work 5 go 2 get up 6 spend
 - **3** check **7** play **4** go **8** have

8 1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 c

- 9A 1 starter
 - 2 main
 - 3 side
 - 4 dessert
 - 5 waiter
 - 6 bill
 - 7 cake
- **9B 1** chicken
 - 2 lemonade
 - **3** fish
 - 4 melon
 - **5** potatoes
 - 6 oil
- **10C** fruit: melon, strawberries vegetables: mushrooms, pepeprs meat or fish: lamb, prawns drinks: lemonade, sparkling water other: butter, pasta

UNIT 3

Lesson 3A

VOCABULARY

- 1A1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 a
- 1B 1 counter
 - 2 shelf
 - 3 fridge
 - **4** plant
 - 5 light
 - 6 shower
 - 7 cupboard
 - **8** sofa
 - rug and washbasin are the extra words

- 1C 1 hall
 - 2 sofas
 - **3** armchair
 - 4 cupboards
 - 5 oven
 - 6 bedrooms
 - 7 shower
 - 8 home office

GRAMMAR

2A	1	here	5	that
	2	This	6	These
	3	those	7	here
	4	there	8	those

2B1b2a3a4c5b6c7g

2C	1	here	4	These
	2	that	5	those

- 2 that 3 that
- 5 that

PRONUNCIATION

- 3A 1 easy
 - 2 these
 - 3 These
 - **4** We
 - 5 keys6 eat, these
- LISTENING
- **4A** hall, living room, dining room, kitchen, bathroom, bedroom
- **4B 1** F ('I always lose my keys')
 - 2 T ('Yes, it is. Those armchairs are new, too.')
 - **3** F ('I like those pictures on the wall.')
 - **4** T ('I want to buy a big table and chairs to put in here.')

6 there

- **5** F ('You have a lot of space to cook.')
- 6 F ('... and I love cooking!')
- **7** T ('Wow, that shower is really big! ... Yes, and it's good, too.')
- 8 F ('... I need to clean it!')
- **4C 1** Those armchairs are new, too.
 - **2** This is the bathroom.
 - **3** That shower is really big!

WRITING

- **5A** Four rooms: the hall, living room, dining room and kitchen
- **5B 1** We have three bedrooms, two bathrooms and a home office upstairs. (one comma)
 - 2 The bedroom has a large bed and a desk. (no commas)
 - **3** In the living room we have a sofa, two armchairs and a big TV. (one comma)
 - **4** Your keys and sunglasses are on the counter. (no commas)
- **6B 1** Enjoy your stay in this modern house.
 - 2 It's perfect for a short break in the city.
 - **3** There's a beautiful view over the park.
 - **4** The kitchen is large and well-equipped.
 - **5** The shops are close by.
 - **6** It's a great area to relax in.

6C Sample answer

82

Enjoy your stay in this modern house. It's perfect for a short break in the city. The house sleeps six people in four bedrooms. The living room has two sofas, a long table and eight chairs. It also has wi-fi and a TV with 100 channels. The big bathroom has a shower and a bath, and the small bathroom has a shower. The kitchen is large and well-equipped, so it's easy to make food. You can put your car in the garage. There's a beautiful view over the park and the shops are close. It's a great place to relax. Welcome!

Lesson 3B

VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 different
 - 2 large / big
 - 3 difficult / hard
 - 4 long / tall
 - 5 hard
- 1B 1 different
 - **2** large
 - **3** easy
 - 4 quiet
 - 5 soft
 - 6 short
 - **7** long
- 1C 1 soft
 - 2 difficult / hard
 - 3 quiet
 - 4 large / big
 - **5** same, different**6** long
 - **7** loud
 - 8 easy

GRAMMAR

- 2A1 c 2 b 3 b 4 a
- 2B 1 've got
 - **2** hasn't got
 - 3 's got
 - 4 have you got
 - 5 Has, hasn't
 - **6** 's got
 - 7 haven't got
 - 8 Have, have
- **2C 1** He has (He's) got everything
 - 2 I haven't got a lot of money
 - **3** Has he got a lamp
 - **4** Yes, he has.
 - **5** Have you got those party lights
 - 6 Yes, I have!

PRONUNCIATION

- **3A 1** Have you got any <u>plants</u>?
 - 2 She hasn't got <u>much money</u>.
 - **3** We've got a <u>lot</u> of <u>milk</u>.
 - **4** Have they got a <u>TV</u>?
 - 5 I've got a two phones.6 Has he got a fridge?
 - \mathbf{o} has ne you a <u>muge</u>

READING

4A 3

4B 1 b **2** c **3** a **4** d **5** e

4C1d2f3b4a5c6e

Lesson 3C

VOCABULARY

1A1b2c3a4a5c6b

- **1B 1** How kind of you!
 - **2** Sorry I'm late.
 - **3** Great to see you.
 - **4** Glad you liked it!
 - **5** Thank you for the lovely evening!

PRONUNCIATION

2A1 b **2** e **3** a **4** f **5** c **6** d

ноw то ...

- **3A 1** c **2** d **3** b **4** a
- **3B 1** 8 o'clock ('About eight?')
 - 2 meat ('I don't eat meat. I hope that's not a problem.')
 - **3** Bella's husband ('This is James, my husband.')
 - **4** Evan arrives
 - 5 sparkling water ('Just water, thanks ... sparkling.')
 - 6 walks ('It's a nice evening, so I can walk to my
 - house.')
- **3C 1** Can I get you something to drink?
 - 2 I'd love to come.
 - 3 Let me take your coat.

SPEAKING

4 A	1	see	4	get
	2	nice	5	drink
	3	take	6	Let

Lesson 3D

GRAMMAR

1A	1	any	5	much
	2	lots	6	is
	3	lot	7	a
	4	there's	8	lots

1C1b2e3a4g5f6h 7c8d

1D1 a 2 c 3 a 4 b

LISTENING

- **2A 1** F ('There are two bedrooms.')
 - **2** T ('In the kitchen there's a new oven and fridge.')
 - **3** F ('There are some small shops in the town centre, very near here.')
 - **4** T ('And there's a big supermarket about a kilometre away. You can walk there.')
 - **5** T ('That's good, because I don't have a car.')
 - **6** F (There's a train station in King Street.)
 - **7** T ('It's very quiet at the weekend.')
 - 8 F ('... but there aren't any restaurants.')
- **2B** cafés, cinemas, noise, restaurants, shops, station, supermarket, traffic
- 2C Picture B

UNIT 4

Lesson 4A VOCABULARY

1A1 b 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 c

			•	a	• •	• •	• •
1B	1	last				6	ago
	2	yester	day			7	last
	3	ago				8	last
	4	after				9	on
	5	in					

- 1C 1 second
 - 2 August
 - **3** July**4** first
 - 5 January
 - 6 April

GRAMMAR

2A1 c **2** a **3** a **4** b

- 2B 1 were
 - **2** was
 - 3 was
 - 4 were
 - 5 Were, wasn't, was
 - 6 was
 - 7 weren't, were
 - 8 wasn't, was
 - 9 were 10 weren't, were
 - i weren i, v
- 2C 1 were
- 2 were
 - 3 was4 weren't
 - **5** were
 - **6** wasn't
 - **7** was
 - 8 were
 - 9 was
 - **10** was

PRONUNCIATION

3A 1 S **2** W **3** S **4** W **5** S, W **6** W

LISTENING

4A	3			
4 B	-	2008	-	2014
	2	2004	5	2000
	3	2011	6	2012

- **4C 1** was
 - 2 was3 wasn't, was
 - 4 were
 - 5 were
 - 6 were
 - 7 was
 - 8 was, was

WRITING

- **5A** 2
- 5B 1 T ('It was eight years ago, in the summer ...')
 2 T ('I was in the car outside my house with the teacher ...')
 - **3** F ('my parents were at the window in the house')
 - **4** F ('The lesson was great! An hour later I was home again.')
 - **5** T ('The lesson was great!')
 - 6 F ('My teacher was very nice ...')
 - 7 T ('... it wasn't easy to drive for the first time')
 - 8 F (The writer was tired in the evening.)
- **5C** eight years ago; in the summer; an hour later; in the evening

6C Sample answer

The first holiday I remember was with my family. It was in August, fifteen years ago, in the Costa Brava in Spain. My mother, father, two brothers and my cousin were there. We were in a small house near the beach. There was a small garden and a nice view. I was five, my brothers were seven and nine and my cousin was six. It was very hot, but also very fun! I was happy. My mum and dad were relaxed and there was lots of ice cream – every day!

Lesson 4B

VOCABULARY

1A	2	jus ab ne	ou [.]	-				5	exactly over under
1B	1	b	2	b	3 c	4 t	5	b	6 c
1D	2 3	an						6	and a point
GR	A٨	1M/	AR						

2A1b2a3c4a5b6c 2B 1 far 4 Not

	iai	-	INOL
2	long	5	many
3	much		

PRONUNCIATION

3A 1 b **2** a **3** f **4** c **5** e **6** d

3B a 3 **b** 6 **c** 1 **d** 5 **e** 2 **f** 4

READING

4 b

5A1 c2f3d4a5b6e

- **5B 1** T ('In the UK, most people live for about 81 years') 2 F ('The average person spends 26 years and seven months sleeping')
 - **3** T ('people in the UK watch TV for eight years and six months')
 - 4 F (540 books)
 - 5 F ('They also spend almost three years on social media')
 - 6 T ('... sixteen months doing sport and exercise')
 - 7 T ('People in the UK are lucky because in an ordinary lifetime they spend three years and two months on holiday.')
 - 8 T ('Spain is the most popular country, with over 18 million visits a year.')
 - 9 T ('They also eat for four years and five months.')
 - **10** F ('... laughs for three months at something funny.')

Lesson 4C VOCABULARY

1A1 c 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 c 6 b

- 1B 1 baker's
 - 2 greengrocer's
 - 3 pharmacy
 - 4 bookshop
 - 5 clothes shop
 - 6 newsagent's
 - 7 butcher's
 - 8 dry-cleaner's
 - 9 sports shop

- 1C 1 bread
 - 2 potatoes
 - 3 medicine
 - 4 history book
 - 5 socks
 - 6 computer magazine 7 lamb

 - 8 collect clean suit 9 football

НОШ ТО...

- 2A bookshop, department store
- 2B1f2b3g4a5h6c 7 e 8 d

PRONUNCIATION

- **3A 1** Can I pay by phone?
 - 2 Can I try jt on?
 - 3 How much is it?
 - 4 Could I have a receipt?

SPEAKING

4A 1	help	4	take
2	sell	5	by
3	How	6	have

Lesson 4D

GRAMMAR

- **1A 1** Should we bring a lot of money?
 - 2 You shouldn't eat there.
 - **3** Don't walk on the grass.
 - 4 Please come early tomorrow.
 - 5 How long should we wait here?
 - 6 They shouldn't visit in winter.

1B 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c

- 1C 1 come
 - 2 should you
 - 3 Don't come
 - 4 bring
 - 5 pack
 - 6 don't
 - 7 don't worry
 - 8 You should
 - 9 should
 - 10 Write

READING

- 2A autumn
- 2B 1 doesn't like
 - 2 quite
 - 3 inside and outside
 - 4 three
 - 5 forests
 - 6 Bukhansan
 - 7 eat 8 can

REVIEW 3-4

GRAMMAR

- **1 1** this 2 there
 - 3 Those
 - 4 these

5 here

6 these

7 This

8 those

2 1 haven't got

- 2 Has (Aran) got
- **3** hasn't
- 4 Have (you) got
- 5 have
- 6 have got, have got
- 7 haven't got
- 8 has got
- **3A 1** There aren't many parks near here.
 - **2** Is there a lot of traffic here?
 - **3** There are some shops close by.
 - 4 Are there any restaurants near you?
 - **5** There isn't much noise here.
 - 6 There are lots of cafés there.

3A	2	some any lots	5	much lot a
4	-	were	-	wasn't
	2	weren't	7	wasn't
	3	was	8	was
	4	Were	9	was
	5	were	10	wasn't

- 5A1 c 2 a 3 e 4 d 5 f 6 b
- 5B1 e 2 b 3 c 4 d 5 f 6 a
- 5C 1 tall
 - 2 much, A lot
 - 3 old
 - **4** far
 - 5 many
 - 6 long
- 6 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b

VOCABULARY

- 7A 1 small
 - 2 bedrooms
 - 3 office 4 desk
 - **5** quiet
 - 6 living
 - 7 cupboards
 - **8** fridge
- B 1 different
 - 2 quiet
 - 3 difficult
 - 4 large 5 soft
 - 6 short
- 7C 1 quiet
- 2 big
 - **3** soft
 - 4 short
 - 5 different
 - 6 difficult
- 8 1 for, nice
 - 2 Sorry, No
 - **3** see, too **4** full. Glad
 - **5** safe, Thank
 - **5** Sale, Indrik
- 9 1 c 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 a
- 10A 1 in
 - **2** after
 - 3 on4 last5 ago

7 after

8 yesterday, ago

6 yesterday

- 9 last
- **10** in

- 10B 1 in
 - 2 in 3 point

4 a

5 point

6 and

UNIT 5

- Lesson 5A
- VOCABULARY
- 1A1 b2 d3 a4 e5 c6 f
- 1B1 a 2 c 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 c
- 1C 1 to
 - 2 when
 - 3 before
 - 4 for
 - 5 all
 - 6 from
 - 7 later
 - 8 when

GRAMMAR

- **2A 1** Did you work
 - 2 Did she study
 - **3** listened
 - 4 didn't like
 - 5 Did you walk
 - **6** I did
- 2B 1 decided
 - 2 wanted
 - 3 didn't want
 - 4 studied
 - 5 remembered
 - 6 looked
 - 7 phoned
 - 8 talked
 - 9 asked 10 didn't offer
 - **11** called
 - 12 lived

PRONUNCIATION

3A 1 /t/ **2** /ɪd/ **3** /d/ **4** /t/ **5** /ɪd/ **6** /t/ **7** /d/ **8** /ɪd/

READING

- **4** C
- **5A 1** all over America
 - 2 Rio de Janeiro

companies')

pentathlon')

local sports club')

- **5B 1** c ('Nicholas wanted to wear his new shoes.')
 - 2 a ('When they arrived at the children's home, there were lots of boys and girls without shoes, or who had very old shoes.')

5 c ('her dad helped her enter competitions at her

6 b ('she was the under-thirteen UK champion for the

7 a ('In Rio she was the first British woman to get to a

85

8 a ('In 2020 she trained and studied psychology at

3 b ('Five years later, in 2010, he started an organisation ...')
4 b ('It collects new shoes from shops and shoe

final in the high jump since 1992.')

university at the same time.')

Lesson 5B VOCABULARY

1A1 c 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 b 6 a

- **1B 1** get a new job
 - 2 pass your exams
 - 3 learn to drive
 - 4 met my future husband
 - **5** leave your job
 - 6 become a doctor
- 1C 1 leave

4 become **5** learn

6 meet

- 2 get 3 pass
 - ass

GRAMMAR

- **2A 1** Did (you) go
 - 2 did (you) see
 - 3 saw
 - 4 knew
 - 5 went
 - 6 didn't speak
 - 7 lost
 - **8** met
 - 9 did (he) come
 - **10** got

2B1b2c3a4a

- **2C 2** When did you leave university?
 - 3 Davina didn't go to work yesterday.
 - **4** Did Emir give her the letters?
 - 5 We knew she was there.
 - **6** He didn't have a lot of work last week.
 - 7 What time did you ring Karla?
 - **8** We met at the party.

PRONUNCIATION

- **3A 1** /e/ **2** /əu/ **3** /æ/ **4** /əu/
- **5** /e/ **6** /æ/ **7** /e/ **8** /æ/

LISTENING

- **4A 1** Taylor
 - 2 Manuel
 - 3 Craig
- **4B 1** F ('At the end of the day my boss asked me to close the shop.')
 - 2 F ('I didn't tell anyone it was my birthday')
 - **3** T ('... it was the third time I tried.')
 - 4 F ('... It started to rain')
 - **5** F ('My parents took me in their car ...')
 - **6** T ('After that we were friends all the time we were at university!')
- **4C 1** b ('... last month was my twenty-first birthday')
 - 2 c ('we all ate some chocolate cake!')
 - **3** b ('about a hundred kilometres from where we live')
 - ${\bf 4}\,$ b ('... we had to wait on the road for a mechanic!
 - After two hours a man came ...')
 - **5** b ('I shared with three other people')
 - **6** b ('... his family moved away from our town when he was seven')

WRITING

- **5A 1** c **2** d **3** a **4** e **5** b
- 5B 1 then

86

- 2 After that
- 3 Next

5C Sample answer

Hi, I'm Alicia Zamora and I'm a teacher. Welcome to my profile! I'd like to tell you a few things about myself. I was born on 23 February, 1996 in Sydney, Australia. My family lived near the sea and I swam almost every day after school.

I finished high school in 2009. After that I studied education at Sydney State University. I always wanted to be an English teacher. When I finished my degree in 2013, I worked as a trainee teacher at Sandare High School. I was a great job and I learnt a lot. Next, I found a job as a teacher at Victoria High School. I moved to Melbourne for the job and worked there for five years. In 2018 I decided to return to Sydney. Now I work at Lowbeach High School. It's close to my family and friends and I love my students. It's my dream job! My interests are swimming, playing video games and going to restaurants with my friends.

Lesson 5C

VOCABULARY

- 1 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 c
- 2 1 e 2 f 3 a 4 c 5 g 6 b 7 h 8 d

ноw то ...

- **3A 1** b **2** c **3** a
- 3B 1 month
 - 2 at home
 - **3** early
 - 4 three
 - 5 a report
 - 6 house
- 3C 1 I'm so sorry I'm late.
 - **2** That's all right.
 - **3** No problem.

PRONUNCIATION

- **4A 1** S
 - 2 NS 3 S
 - **3** 3
- SPEAKING
- 5A 1 really
 - **2** problem
 - 3 late
 - 4 wrong
 - 5 sorry

Lesson 5D

GRAMMAR

- **1A 1** a **2** c **3** b **4** a
- **1B 1** This restaurant is too noisy.
 - **2** That book was a bit boring.
 - **3** Your shirt looks nice.
 - **4** Paris is a beautiful city.
 - **5** I feel so angry about what happened.
 - **6** That car is too expensive for me.
 - 7 The party was really good.
 - 8 It looks very busy in here.
- **1C 1** good restaurant
 - 2 really
 - **3** new Italian place
 - 4 too 5 so

6 delicious

87

ANSWER KEY

- 7 very
- 8 a bit
- 9 looks good
- 10 quite

LISTENING

2A 1 B 2 C 3 A

- **2B a** 1 ('I went for a walk on Saturday, then woke up at eleven on Sunday')
 - **b** 3 ('... on Sunday I went to the gym, I always go on Sundays.')
 - c 1 ('It was a bit boring, really. ... I was happy to be back at work today!')
 - **d** 2 ('I stayed at home and spent time with my family.')

8 with

- **e** 3 'I went with my girlfriend.')
- **f** 2 ('It was great. A really fun weekend.')
- 2C 1 was 5 went
 - 2 bit 6 get 7 nice
 - 3 did
 - 4 walk

UNIT 6

Lesson 6A

VOCABULARY

- **1A 1** curly hair
 - 2 top
 - 3 jacket
 - 4 skirt
 - 5 bald
 - 6 beard
 - 7 tie
 - 8 shirt 9 trousers
 - 10 socks

- 1B 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 c 6 b
- 1C 1 tall
 - 2 straight 3 blonde
 - 4 suit

 - 5 dresses 6 jeans

GRAMMAR

- 2A 1 'm/am enjoying
 - 2 'm/am sitting
 - 3 'm/am watching
 - 4 's/is playing
 - 5 'm/am having
 - 6 isn't raining
 - 7 's/is visiting
 - 8 'm not/am not thinking
 - 9 are (you) doing
 - 10 Are (you) working

2B1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b

- 2C 1 Soren and Lazlo are playing football.
 - 2 Mila isn't working from home today.
 - **3** What are you doing?
 - 4 I'm watching TV at the moment.
 - **5** Is your brother making a video?
 - 6 Renata isn't sitting at her desk.
 - 7 Where is Charlie going?
 - 8 I'm studying French at the moment.

PRONUNCIATION

- 3A 1 four
 - 2 five
 - 3 five
- 3B 1 Where, going
 - 2 What, listening
 - 3 Who, talking
 - 4 Why, running 5 What, wearing

LISTENING

4A 1 in airport security ('I'm going through security now') 2 driving ('I'm driving there now, though.')

4 four

5 four

4B1d2a3e4c5b6f

- **4C 1** b ('The traffic is really bad.')
 - 2 b ('Can I ask you to wait outside the airport')
 - **3** a ('Oh wait, I'm going through security now. Can I call you back in a few minutes?')
 - **4** a ('I'm tall, and I've got long, straight hair.')
 - **5** c ('I'm tall, and I've got long, straight hair ... red hair ...')
 - 6 a ('I'm wearing jeans and a black jacket.')

WRITING

Good Great group moment! 5 Do you have **an amazing** good photo of a group moment you'd like to **share** show? Send it to us with a **short** long description and say why it was great. You can win a **camera** laptop!

6A B

6B1D2C3E4A

- 6C 1 jacket, jeans, T-shirt, shirt
 - 2 short, straight hair, dark, curly hair, moustache, curly hair
 - **3** wearing, smiling, standing
- **6D** See Ex 6A for a sample answer.

Lesson 6B

VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 noisy / loud
 - 2 cheap
 - 3 interestina
 - 4 difficult / hard
 - 5 safe

1B1 e 2 c 3 f 4 a 5 b 6 d

- 2 1 ride
- 2 go by
 - 3 got out of

2 more difficult

4 more comfortable

3 happier

5 better

6 bigger

7 worse

8 cheaper

- 4 take
- 5 get on
- 6 get off

GRAMMAR

3B 1 easier

3A 1 a **2** c **3** c **4** b **5** b **6** a

PRONUNCIATION

- 4A 1 It's bigger than a house.
 - 2 They're worse than cars.
 - **3** It's more <u>expensive</u> than a <u>holiday</u>.
 - **4** They're <u>smaller</u> than <u>bikes</u>.
 - 5 It's <u>easier</u> than <u>that</u>.
 - **6** They're more <u>comfortable</u> than <u>planes</u>.

READING

- 5A 1 Central-Mid-Levels Escalator
 - 2 Amfibus
 - **3** The Chiva Express
- **5B 1** A ('you can see places that you can't see from the land')
 - **2** C ('It takes tourists up mountains to see the beautiful views.')
 - 3 E ('It's free.')
 - 4 C ('you can sit on the roof!')
 - **5** A (in the Netherlands)
 - **6** E ('there's no outside escalator in the world that's longer than this one')
- **5C 1** F ('It has big seats ...')
 - 2 T ('It has ... food and drink services.')
 - **3** F ('Fifty passengers can get on the bus')
 - **4** T ('you can see places that you can't see from the land')
 - 5 T (It's 800 metres long)

Lesson 6C

VOCABULARY

1A 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 c

- 1B 1 square
 - 2 pedestrian
 - **3** crossroads
 - 4 end
 - 5 corner
 - 6 park
- 1C 1 square
 - 2 statue
 - 3 end
 - 4 bridge5 traffic
 - 6 parks

ноw то ...

- **2A 1** electronics shop
 - 2 department store
 - **3** about 10 minutes
- **2B** B

PRONUNCIATION

- **3A 1** No, at the cross-roads you turn <u>left</u>.
 - 2 No, you go past the <u>café</u>.
 - **3** No, it's <u>Verdon</u> Drive.

SPEAKING

- 4A 1 end
 - 2 turn
 - 3 past
 - 4 straight
 - **5** on

88

Lesson 6D

GRAMMAR

- 1A 1 out of
 - 2 across
 - **3** up
 - 4 towards
 - 5 off
 - 6 over 7 along
 - 8 past
- 1B1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b

READING

2A 3

- **2B1** c **2** e **3** a **4** d **5** b 6 f
- **2C 1** F (the article says that 're-wilding' is a recent change)
 - **2** T ('if you don't have a garden plants can grow on tall buildings')
 - **3** F ('In some cities, flowers grow on the top of bus stops!')
 - **4** F ('In the summer ...')
 - 5 T ('When we spend time in nature, we feel more relaxed. Plants also make the air quality better, because trees and flowers make oxygen.')
 - **6** T ('Growing plants on buildings makes them warmer in the winter and cooler in the summer, too.')

REVIEW 5-6

GRAMMAR

- **1A 1** We arrived in Rome at 4 p.m.
 - **2** A: Did you study Italian at school? B: Yes, we did.
 - **3** I didn't watch the news yesterday.
 - **4** When I was young, I played a lot of football.
 - **5** A: Did you start the meeting early? B: No, we didn't. You're late.
 - **6** I tried to learn the guitar last year, but it was difficult.
 - 7 Did you travel with your family?
 - 8 Carole didn't listen to me yesterday.
- **1B 1** got
 - 2 woke up
 - **3** wasn't
 - **4** rang
 - 5 didn't arrive
 - 6 didn't know
 - 7 took 8 had
 - 9 didn't leave
 - 10 said
- 2 1 big city
 - 2 green
 - 3 very
 - 4 big, old
 - **5** too
 - 6 feel tired
 - **7** so
 - 8 quite
- 3 1 's/is meeting
 - 2 are (you) doing3 's/is working

4 aren't answering

- 5 'm/am having
- 6 Is (James) playing
- 7 isn't sitting
- 8 'm/am checking
- **4A 1** Marek is taller than me.
 - **2** Motorbikes are more dangerous than cars.
 - **3** Are children happier than adults?
 - **4** Cities are bigger than towns.
 - **5** Which is further from here, your office or your house?
 - 6 The train is more comfortable than the bus.
 - **7** Which is worse, rain or snow?
 - 8 This dress is nicer than that dress.
- 4B 1 older
 - 2 newer
 - 3 more expensive
 - 4 better
 - 5 safer
 - 6 more difficult
 - 7 faster
 - 8 busier

5A1b2c3b4a

- 5B 1 along
 - **2** towards
 - 3 through
 - **4** up
 - 5 over
 - 6 down
 - 7 out of
 - 8 across

VOCABULARY

6A	1	all	4	from
	2	before	5	to
	3	for	6	later
6 B	1	past	5	past
	2	lose	6	to
	3	late	7	had
	4	missed	8	o'clock

7 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 b

8 1 c 2 f 3 a 4 g 5 h 6 b 7 e 8 d

- 9 1 boring
 - **2** by
 - **3** ferry **4** safe
 - **5** on
 - 6 ride

dangerous, in and *taxi* are the extra words.

- 10 1 park
 - 2 square
 - 3 statue
 - 4 crossroads
 - 5 end
 - 6 pedestrian
 - 7 lights
 - 8 corner

UNIT 7

Lesson 7A

VOCABULARY

1A 1 a 2 c 3 f 4 e 5 d 6 b

- 1B 1 write
 - 2 translate
 - 3 play 4 type
 - 5 drive
 - 6 design
- 1C 1 play
 - 2 teach
 - 3 relaxed
 - 4 fix
 - 5 write
 - 6 work7 designs
 - 8 hands
 - 9 long
 - **10** translate

GRAMMAR

2A1b2c3a4a

2B	1	a	7	_
	2	-	8	_
	3	a	9	an
	4	the	10	_
	5	a	11	the
	6	The	12	at

- 2C 1 The,
 - **2** –, an, a
 - **3** –, –
 - **4** the, the

PRONUNCIATION

- **3A 1** I get up early in the morning.
 - **2** I'd like an apple and an orange.
 - **3** We've got a meeting in the morning.
 - 4 These two things are the same.
 - **5** She's got a good job in a company.
 - 6 He's on the phone at the moment.

READING

4A1 c2 d3 e4 a

- **4B 1** online teacher ('the money is good')
 - 2 delivery driver ('it's a great way to work outside and do exercise at the same time')
 - 3 house sitter ('you can stay for many months or one night!')
 - **4** delivery driver ('Always have something to eat before you ride your bike though, or you can be very hungry when you finish!')
 - 5 house sitter ('It helps if you're good with animals, because people often have a dog, cat ...')
 - 6 upcycling artist ('fix them and make them look better.)
 - 7 online teacher ('A lot of people enjoy learning new skills, or need to study more to pass an exam. Maybe you can help them.')
 - 8 upcycling artist ('a broken chair or an old box')
- 4C 1 pets
 - ${\bf 2} \ \text{interesting} \\$
 - **3** with people
 - 4 can
 - **5** with their hands
 - 6 selling
 - 7 outside
 - 8 need

Lesson 7B

VOCABULARY

- **1A 1** turn off the music / turn the music off
 - 2 pick up rubbish / pick rubbish up
 - **3** looked after my dog
 - **4** gave up her job / gave her job up
 - **5** clean this mess up / clean up this mess
 - 6 look up the information / look the information up

6 turn

- 7 pick up my book / pick my book up
- 8 look after the children

1B1 c2a3b4c5c6b

- 1C 1 gave4 clean2 look5 pick
 - 3 look

GRAMMAR

2A1 c 2 g 3 e 4 f 5 b 6 a 7 h 8 d

2B1 c2 a 3 c4 b5 a6 b

- **2C 1** don't usually work
 - 2 'm/am helping
 - 3 makes
 - **4** sells
 - **5** are buying
 - 6 're/are making
 - 7 're/are sending
 - 8 like

PRONUNCIATION

3A It isn't pronounced in any of the sentences.

LISTENING

4A a

- **4B 1** W ('I'm a teacher')
 - **2** J ('I'm in an office all day')
 - **3** J ('we're practising for next week, when we have a big game.')
 - 4 W ('Today I'm working in a vegetable garden.')
- 4C 1 F ('I work at a secondary school')
 - 2 T ('... we're not growing anything now. It's January, so it's too cold to grow plants')
 - **3** T ('At the moment we're picking up rubbish and taking out old plants, preparing the garden for the spring.')
 - **4** F (It's hard work.)
 - **5** T ('So it's great to come here and spend time with the girls. They all love playing football!')
 - **6** F ('... a bit boring.')
 - 7 T ('They all love playing football!')
 - 8 F ('Today we're practising for next week, when we have a big game.')

WRITING

- **5A** b, c, d, f
- 5B 1 For
 - 2 like
 - 3 give
- **5C** Sample answer

The community group in my area do lots of things for local people. For example, we organise sports days for children once a month. The children play football, tennis and basketball and it's free, so it's good for families that don't have much money. We also have a website where volunteers can offer to help people with things like shopping or technology. To give another example, you can work with an old person in their garden. It doesn't take a lot of time and it's nice to meet new people!

5D Sample answer

The woman is training a girl's football team in the park. It's 10 o' clock on Saturday morning and it's sunny. The woman is talking to the girls and telling them to run fast.

Lesson 7C

VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 landline
 - 2 leave 3 wait
 - 4 back
 - **5** delete
 - 6 phone
- **1B 1** minute
 - **2** double
 - **3** send
 - 4 back
 - 5 smartphone
 - 6 call
 - 7 deleted
 - 8 landline

ноw то ...

2 Thank you for calling (phoning) MovMaxx cinemas. Please choose (select) an option. For films and times, press 1. For our (ticket) prices, press 2. To speak to one of our team, press 9 (5). Alternatively, please visit (read) our website at movmaxx.co.uk.

3A 2

- **3B 1** Saturday
 - **2** four/4
 - **3** three/3
 - **4** 11
 - **5** 10
 - 6 12.50 7 website
 - 8 food

PRONUNCIATION

4A 1 F 2 F 3 U 4 F 5 U 6 F

SPEAKING

- **5A 1** I'm phoning
 - 2 tell me
 - 3 another
 - 4 that's all
 - 5 your help

Lesson 7D

- GRAMMAR
- 1A1 b2g3a4h5d6e7c8f
- 1B1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a
- 1C 1 planned
 - 2 decided
 - 3 like
 - 4 'd hate
 - 5 want/'d love6 'm learning
 - **7** need
 - 8 'd love/want

LISTENING

2A 1 B **2** C **3** A

- **2B 1** M ('I would also love to learn more about photography.')
 - **2** R ('I'm learning English because I need to use it in my job')
 - **3** K ('I love dancing and I want to learn to dance salsa and tango')
 - **4** K ('I'm learning English because I need to give presentations about my clothes to companies and shops')
 - **5** M ('I'm learning English because I'd like to work as a Spanish teacher. I need to speak and write in English well to do that')

4 want

5 like

6 plan

- 6 R ('I'm trying to learn the piano as a hobby.')
- 2C 1 need
 - 2 hobby
 - 3 future

UNIT 8

Lesson 8A

VOCABULARY

1A1 b2a3c4c5a6b

- **1B 1** lovely, forest
 - 2 middle
 - 3 Ocean
 - 4 pretty, area
 - 5 top, wonderful
 - 6 National
- 1C 1 wonderful
 - 2 coast
 - 3 ocean
 - 4 lovely
 - 5 National
 - 6 of 7 middle
 - 8 pretty

GRAMMAR

- 2A1a2c3a4b
- 2B 1 furthest / farthest
 - 2 largest
 - 3 highest
 - 4 driest
 - 5 wettest
 - 6 most beautiful

PRONUNCIATION

- 3A 1 expensive
 - 2 way
 - 3 place
 - 4 away
 - 5 area
 - 6 month
- **3B** Sentences 1, 4 and 5

READING

- **4A** C
- 4B 1 Y ('It's a lovely street in the centre of York.')
 - **2** O ('It's about two hours away by bus ...')
 - 3 Y ('Rowntree Park, close to David and Leyla's house')
 - **4** O ('They're about 40 km north of York')
 - 5 O (It's near Scarborough Castle.)
 - 6 Y (It's near the Shambles.)

- **4C 1** b ('From the top you have great views of the streets and the centre.')
 - 2 c ('It's a lovely street in the centre of York.')
 - **3** a ('Some of the buildings are 800 years old!')
 - **4** a ('We walked for five hours')
 - 5 c (' The castle is on the coast, so after you visit, you can walk along the beach!')

Lesson 8B

VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 photos
 - 2 visit
 - **3** tour **4** look
 - **5** quide
 - 6 use
- **1B 1** took
 - 2 takes
 - **3** trying
 - 4 used
 - 5 going on
 - 6 went with
- 1C 1 around
 - 2 local
 - 3 tour
 - **4** photos
 - 5 guide
 - 6 class

GRAMMAR

- **2A1** a **2** c **3** a **4** b **5** a **6** b
- **2B 1** are/'re going to visit
 - **2** are (you) going to watch
 - 3 am/'m going to take
 - 4 'm not going to stay
 - 5 Is (Helena) going to play
 - 6 isn't going to eat
- **2C 1** Are you going to travel
 - 2 Yes, I am
 - 3 I'm going to visit
 - 4 Who are you going to go with
 - 5 We're going to do
 - 6 Where are you going to stay
 - 7 we aren't going to stay
 - 8 we're going to get

PRONUNCIATION

LISTENING

2 two

4A 1 Rio de Janeiro

- **3A 1** Who are you going to see?
 - 2 Is she going to leave?
 - **3** Where are they going to stay?
 - **4** How are we going to travel?
 - **5** Are you going to play?

4B1 e 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 d 6 b

Copacabana beach.')

organised tour.')

4C 1 T ('We're going to stay in a really nice hotel on

3 F ('Then on the third day we're going on an

made with black beans and rice.')

4 F (Santa Teresa is the old town.)

2 T ('I really want to eat feijoada, a traditional dish

91

6 What are we going to do?

- 5 T ('It's a small town about 300 km east of Rio.')
- ${\bf 6}\ \top$ ('I read that the beaches there are wonderful.')
- **7** T ('... Karl loves taking photos, he's going to take a photography class there.')
- 8 F ('We're not going to do anything! Just swim in the sea or the pool ...')

WRITING

- 5A 1 Rio de Janeiro
 - 2 3 August
 - 3 hot
 - 4 the local food
 - 5 on the beach
- 5B 1 so
 - 2 because
 - 3 because
 - **4** so
- 5D Sample answer

In July, my family and I are going to go the Greek island of Zakynthos. It's my grandmother's 70th birthday, so we're going to have a party for her!

We're going to stay in my uncle's house in the village of Keri. We're going to drive from Athens to Kyllini, then take a boat to Zante town. From there it's half an hour to his house.

When we're there, we're going to swim in the sea every day. If it's not too hot, we're going to cycle to visit relatives as well. We're going to eat lots of food, too!

Lesson 8C VOCABULARY

1A1 c 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 c

- 1B 1 gift
 - 2 view
 - 3 password
 - 4 restaurant
 - 5 double
 - 6 shower 7 air
- 1C 1 pass 2 transfer
 - 2 trans 3 lift
 - 4 safe
 - 5 service
 - 6 late
 - 7 bill
 - 8 luggage

ноw то ...

- **2A 1** b **2** c **3** d **4** a
- **2B 1** F ('I booked a twin room')
 - **2** F ('The TV in my room isn't working.')
 - **3** T ('Is it possible to book an airport transfer for tomorrow?')
 - **4** F ('I'd like to keep my passport in it.')

PRONUNCIATION

3A 1 b **2** a **3** a **4** b

SPEAKING

4A 1 b **2** f **3** a **4** d **5** e **6** c

Lesson 8D

GRAMMAR

- 1 1 well
 - 2 slowly
 - 3 happy
 - 4 quiet5 easily
 - 6 loud
 - 7 careful
 - **8** bad
 - 9 dangerously
- 10 noisy
- 2A 1 brilliant 2 well
 - **3** badly
 - 4 hard
 - **5** fast
 - **6** aood
 - 7 dangerously
 - 8 careful

READING

- **3A 1** B **2** C **3** A
- **3B a** 2 ('Most people who come here only stay a short time.')
 - **b** 1 ('It's an interesting area of forest')
 - **c** 3 ('... in the middle of the old town you can take a bath!')
 - **d** 1 (eagles)
 - e 1 ('... and experience how they live.')
 - **f** 2 ('But with this wonderful experience you can stay overnight in a special hotel. The walls and floors are salt!')
 - **g** 3 ('... a cup of Georgian tea.')
 - h 2 ('In the morning, wake up early to see the sun slowly come up over the desert, which was a lake millions of years ago.')

REVIEW 7-8

GRAMMAR

1A	1	а	6	the
	2	the	7	a
	3	_	8	a
	4	а	9	-
	5	the	10	an
1B	1	the	4	-
	2	a	5	the
	3	the	6	the, the

- **2A 1** She doesn't like English food.
 - **2** Are you listening to me?
 - **3** How many languages do you speak?
 - 4 Who is Jack speaking to? Does he know her?
 - **5** I usually work on Mondays, but today I'm not working.
 - **6** We have dinner together once a week.
- **B 1** We're planning to go to Turkey on holiday.
 - 2 What would you like to do this evening?
 - **3** I don't want to watch this film.
 - **4** When did you learn to drive?
 - **5** I'd love to visit the Bahamas.
 - 6 Would you like to come to my party?
- **3A 1** Jade is the tallest.
 - 2 Laptop 3 is the most expensive.

3 Tina's house is the furthest from here.

5 slow

6 bad

7 happy

8 quietly

- 4 Delhi is the biggest city.
- 5 Car 2 is the most modern.
- 6 Molly's café is the best.

3B1 c **2** f **3** a **4** e **5** g **6** b **7** d

- C 1 good 2 well

 - 3 loud
 - 4 loudly

4 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b

VOCABULARY

5

- 1 good
- 2 front
- 3 hours
- 4 translate
- 5 fix
- 6 remember 7 hands
- 8 people
- **1** up 6
 - 2 up 3 after
 - **4** up
 - 5 off
 - **6** up
- 1 leave (*Call. ring* and *phone* all mean the same.) 7 2 oh nine oh (All the others have two nines.)
 - **3** mobile (We can *read*, *leave* or *send* a message.)
 - 4 moment (Landlines, mobiles and smartphones are all types of phone.)
 - 5 back (Second, minute and moment are all periods of time.)
 - 6 call back (*Call*, *ring* and *phone* all mean the same.)

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 b 8

- 9 1 print
 - 2 transfer
 - 3 check
 - 4 luggage
 - 5 pool
 - 6 view
 - **1** b **2** e
 - **3** a
 - **4** g
 - **5** č
 - **6** d **7** f

CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1-4

GRAMMAR

1

1 Do	5 are
2 do	6 listen
3 like	7 don't
4 are	8 are

I have two sisters. My **sisters'** names are Kate and Vicky. 2 Kate's house is near mine, but Vicky lives in Spain with her husband and two sons. The **boys'** names are Mateo and Diego. Vicky's an English teacher and her husband's a doctor. Kate works in her friend's café.

- **3 1** We hardly ever meet for lunch.
 - 2 I go running twice a week.
 - **3** James is sometimes late for work. / James is late for work sometimes.
 - 4 We go shopping on Saturdays.
 - **5** I don't usually work at the weekend.
 - 6 Our teacher is always friendly.
 - 7 My brother never gets up early.
 - 8 I check my emails three times an hour.
- Δ 1 this 4 that 2 those 5 these 3 there
 - 6 here
 - **1** is
- 2 isn't

4 is

5

- **3** is
- 6 aren't **7** is 8 are

5 were

6 were

93

5 are

- 6 1 Have (you) got
 - 2 haven't
 - 3 've/have got
 - 4 Has (your sister) got
 - 5 has
 - 6 haven't got
 - 1 was 4 wasn't
 - 2 weren't
 - 3 were

НОW ТО ...

7

- 8 1 Would
 - 2 love/like
 - 3 about
 - 4 busy
 - 5 Can/Could
 - 6 fine
 - 7 have
 - 8 would
 - 9 like
 - 10 sorry 11 How
 - 12 sell
 - 13 much
 - 14 take
 - 15 pay

VOCABULARY

- 1 officer 9
 - 2 player
 - 3 designer
 - 4 driver
 - 5 assistant 6 student
- 10 1 live 2 work
 - 3 get
 - 4 teaches
 - 5 goes
 - 6 study
 - **7** go
 - 8 play
- 11 1 cheese 2 tomato

3 lettuce

4 cucumber

5 peppers 6 lemonade 7 orange juice

- 12 1 dinner for two
 - 2 starters
 - 3 main course
 - **4** side dishes
 - 5 dessert
 - 6 waiters
 - 7 service charge
 - 8 bill
- 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 c 13
- 1 newsagent's 14
 - 2 pharmacy, supermarket
 - 3 sports shop
 - 4 dry cleaner's, café

CUMULATIVE REVIEW 5-8

GRAMMAR

- 1 travelled 1
 - 2 studied
 - 3 didn't post
 - 4 stopped
 - 5 didn't arrive
 - 6 didn't watch
 - 7 laughed
 - 8 cooked
- 2 1 aren't working
 - 2 're wearing
 - 3 are (you) doing
 - 4 'm laughing
 - 5 is telling
 - 6 is writing
 - 7 Is (that girl) playing
 - 8 isn't singing
- **1** I'm taller than my mum. 3
 - 2 The sofa is more comfortable than the chair.
 - **3** Which is more expensive, coffee or tea?
 - 4 The weather today is worse than yesterday.
 - 5 My town is safer than a big city.
 - 6 Which is further, my house or your house?

7 an

- 7 A train is quicker than a bicycle.
- 8 Which is more difficult, English or Thai?

4 **1** a 5 The 6 -

- 2 -
- **3** a
- 4 -
- 5 1 to watch
 - 2 to visit
 - 3 to meet
 - 4 to sleep
 - 5 to play
 - 6 to be
- 1 are (you) going to come 6
 - 2 're/are going to stay
 - **3** 're/are going (to go)
 - 4 'm/am not going to drive
 - 5 're/are going to have
 - 6 not going to be
- 7 1 well
 - 2 quietly
 - 3 speaking very fast
 - 4 beautifully
 - 5 busy
 - 6 loud

94

VOCABULARY 1 get

4 meet

6 learn

6 jeans

7 coat

4 after

5 pick

6 look

5 check

6 leave

8 pay

4 any

6 some

5 much

6 Are

7 are

8 isn't

4 far

5 many

6 long

5 a

If you visit Thailand and like **watching** animals, it's a good

Lopburi is three hours from Bangkok and lots of monkeys

idea to visit the city of Lopburi for the monkey festival.

being quiet! During the festival, people like giving the

monkeys fruit and vegetables. They love **eating** them, but sometimes they also throw food at people! It's fun!

live there. They love **playing** in the street and hate

7 passes

5 straight

5 get

2 pass **3** become

8

- 1 tall 9
- 2 hair 3 beard
- **4** shorts
- 1 turn 10
- 2 give **3** up
- 11 1 slow
- 2 safe
 - **3** uncomfortable
 - 4 quiet
 - 5 long
 - 6 cheap
 - 7 difficult 8 boring
- 12 1 book
 - 2 view
 - 3 with 4 transfer
- **НОW ТО** ...
- 13 1 sorrv
 - 2 problem
 - 3 way
 - **4** end
 - 5 front
 - 6 about
 - 7 another
 - 8 anything
 - 9 give
 - 10 afraid
 - 11 send

CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1-8

GRAMMAR

- 1 lives 1
 - 2 Does
 - 3 isn't
 - 4 like
 - 5 Does, doesn't
 - 6 finishes
 - 7 have 8 does

1 some

2 a

3 an

1 any

2 is

3 a

4 Is

1 tall

3 old

2 much

2

3

4

5

6 7	 should travel shouldn't go should bring should wear should n't (only) travel should go Always be Please ask don't be 		2 3 4 5 6 7 8	bedroom counter oven cupboards living armchair Upstairs shower garage	
	4 Never5 bring6 Have		4 1 2	in after on	
8	 had met told woke rang didn't know Those glasses look great. 		2 3 4 5 6	brothers cousins nephews daughter uncles husband son	
	 2 This café is really busy. 3 Have you got any green to 4 I watched a very interestin 5 That restaurant is too exp 6 Tuesday's lesson was a bit 7 Did you have a good journ 8 It's so loud in here! 	ng film yesterday. bensive. t boring.	8 6 1 2 3 4 5	grandson see too Sorry No for	(2 2 2 1 (
10	2 along 5	past over away	2	spring sunny warm	
11	1 the 2 a 3 the 4 - 5 the 6 the, the 7 The, - 8 -, an, a		2 3 4 5 6 7	missed was hear had ill problem left down	
12	 9 - 10 the, a/the 1 c 5 2 g 6 	h	2 3	ride on take by	
13	3 a 7 4 e 8 1 slower 2 faster	- 1	2 3	fix good long drive	
	 3 more interesting 4 easier 5 quieter 6 more beautiful 7 better 2 sheare and 		2 3 4	with look take on wifi	
	8 cheaper	I		park	
VC 1	CABULARY 1 hungry			air shower	
	2 angry 3 thirsty 4 ill		5 6	gym spa restaurants	

- - **4** last 5 ago6 yesterday

- **6** of 7 was 8 glad 9 Have **10** for
- 4 rainy5 snowing6 summer
- **5** out of **6** off
- 7 foot
- 5 front
- 6 hands 7 alone
- 5 try6 do7 use8 visit
- 5 gym 6 spa 7 restaurants
- **8** gift

- 5 tired 6 bored
- **2 1** go to

4 ill

- 2 spend 3 go 4 meet 5 check 6 get

Pearson Education Limited

KAO Two KAO Park Hockham Way Harlow, Essex CM17 9SR England and Associated Companies throughout the world.

pearsonenglish.com/speakout3e

© Pearson Education Limited 2022

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published 2022

ISBN: 978-1-292-39957-7

Set in BBC Reith Sans

Printed and bound by Lego S.p.A

Acknowledgements

Written by Damian Williams

Image Credits:

123RF.com: Dinis Tolipov 63, dudlajzov 52, ifong 10, stocksolutions 10, utima 10; Alamy Stock Photo: Marc Bruxelle 41, Trevor Collens 15; Getty Images: AJ_Watt/E+ 19, Alberto Manuel Urosa Toledano/Moment Open 45, benedek/ iStock Unreleased 53, Bruno De Hogues/Gamma-Rapho 43, Burak Karademir/ Moment 4, Cathrin Mueller - FIFA 31, Charday Penn/E+ 39, CreativaStudio/E+ 21, Don Hammond/Design Pics 9, Dougal Waters/DigitalVision 47, Ed Jones/ AFP 15, Education Images 57, Edwin Tan/E+ 47, ewg3D/iStock 23, FG Trade/ E+ 5, gnomeandi/iStock 64, Han Van Vonno/EyeEm 10, helovi/iStock 57, Henk Hulshof/iStock 41, imagedepotpro/iStock 48, Jacob Wackerhausen/E+ 9, Javier Snchez Mingorance/EyeEm 13, JGalione/E+ 53, Johner Images 9, Juanmonino/ E+ 7, 9, 9, Kentaroo Tryman/Maskot 37, Kmatta/Moment 51, Kriangkrai Thitimakorn/Moment 29, lechatnoir/E+ 40, Lorado/E+ 49, mammuth/E+ 32, Maremagnum 41, Maskot 6, 37, Michael Steele 33, monkeybusinessimages/ iStock 9, 34, Morsa Images/DigitalVision 9, Nikada/E+ 20, PhotoAlto/Eric Audras 27, PhotoAlto/Laurence Mouton 5, Photos by R A Kearton/Moment 53, Rick Friedman/Corbis Historical 25, Roy James Shakespeare/Photodisc 36, Siri Stafford/Photodisc 37, slkoceva/iStockEditorial 23, SolStock/E+ 49, Thomas Barwick/DigitalVision 18, Tom Werner/DigitalVision 5, Westend61 9, 38; Gotta Have Sole Foundation: 33; Shutterstock.com: 16, 27, AJR_photo 9, Allen.G 64, azure1 10, Catarina Belova 55, Clari Massimiliano 58, Darryl Brooks 11, dashtik 11, Dragon Images 7, Duncan Cuthbertson 53, ESB Basic 33, Ewelina Wachala 19, GingerMary 63, hlphoto 11, Irina Soboleva S 28, Johner Images 51, littlenySTOCK 43, Lukasz Pajor 53, MilsiArt 9, NatashaRamenskaya 9, Photoongraphy 10, Samuel Borges Photography 59, SBS Studios 9, skyNext 38, Studio Romantic 61, Supavadee butradee 51, tanadtha lomakul 10, TLF Images 57, Valentina Razumova 10, Vulp 35, WAYHOME studio 12

Cover Images: Front: **Getty Images:** FG Trade, Luis Alvarez, Sunwoo Jung, Tim Robberts

B B C

Speak out

3RD EDITION

Welcome to the third edition of our best-selling eight-level general English course for adults – *Speakout*. Developed in association with BBC Studios, this new edition has been completely revised based on feedback from *Speakout* users from all over the world.

Speakout 3rd Edition offers 100% new content, all-new video, and a fresh new look and feel, all underpinned by flexible components for in-class, online and hybrid use.

- Print version of the Online Practice activities
- Built on the Global Scale of English
- Regular language review sections and cumulative review pages to reinforce learning and help learners to track their progress
- Pronunciation and speaking activities
- Benchmark Test task types included

Workbook

• Audio available online

Also available

- Student's Book and eBook with Online Practice
- Student's eBook with Online Practice Access Code

Speakout 3rd Edition is fully accessible on your computer, tablet and mobile phone so that you can enjoy the full functionality of your course wherever you are.

pearsonenglish.com/speakout3e

Learning English
with Pearson?
Access English

language materials to support your learning journey.

Ready to prove your English skills?

Get exclusive preparation materials for Pearson English exams. **pearsonenglish.com/exams-offer**

Speakout 3rd Edition	GSE	Benchmark	Pearson English International Certificate
A1	22-32	Benchmark Test A	A1
A2	30-38	Benchmark Test A	Level 1 (A2)
A2+	36-44	Benchmark Test A	Level 1 (A2)
B1	42-52	Benchmark Test B1	Level 2 (B1)
B1+	50-60	Benchmark Test B1	Level 2 (B1)
B2	58-67	Benchmark Test B2	Level 3 (B2)
B2+	64-76	Benchmark Test B2	Level 3 (B2)
C1–C2	73-90	Benchmark Test C	Level 4 (C1) & Level 5 (C2)

